

命题调研



命题分析与应试策略

分析研究最近几年的高考试卷可以看出,在十五道单项填空题中,所有的语法项目、词汇和习语都是在特定的情景中进行考查的。通过设置情景,将对知识和语言意义的考查有机地结合起来,达到了对知识与能力进行综合测试的目的。

单项填空题主要考查四个方面:语法基础知识、动词短语知识、词语辨析及语用知识(主要指交际用语)。

命题分析

近年全国各地高考试题中的单项填空部分有以下特点:

1. 知识点考查面广、点多,热点突出。

近年单项填空题考查的知识点广,几乎涵盖了中学教学大纲要求的所有内容,教材中的一些重点语法项目如:冠词、代词、形容词、副词、动词、名词性从句、定语从句、状语从句、情景交际等几乎每年都考。动词的时态与语态、非谓语动词及动词与动词短语的辨析是高考考查的重点和热点,其次是各种从句、情景交际和冠词的用法等。

2. 试题题干简洁明了,考查目的明确。

从06年各地高考题可以看出,试题的题干短小精悍,简洁明快,内容直达考点,句子结构的难度与往年相比有明显的下降。

『典例1』 The _____ on his face told me that he was angry.

A. impression B. sight C. appearance D. expression

『解析』 D。该题题干十分明了,主要考查对选项中四个名词词义的辨析,impression 印象, sight 视觉, appearance 出现,外貌, expression 表情,脸色。题意为他脸上的表情告诉我他生气了。故选 D。

3. 注重对语言基础知识的考查。

这类试题主要考查学生对某些相关知识的识记和理解,注重考查学生的基础知识,一般不会出现难题和怪题。这是06年各地高考试题单项填空部分的普遍特点。

『典例2』 My grandma still treats me like a child. She can't imagine _____ grown up. (06年重庆卷)

A. my B. mine C. myself D. me

『解析』 D。该题考查代词的用法。题中 imagine 后缺少宾语,可以排除选项 A。我们只要掌握物主代词、反身代词和人称代词宾格的基本用法及区别,很容易得

Remember what should be remembered, and forget what should be forgotten. Alter what is changeable, and accept what is unchangeable.

佳句
欣赏



出答案 D。

『典例 3』 —How are you managing to do your work without an assistant ?(06 年重庆卷)

—Well I _____ somehow.

A. get along B. come on C. watch out D. set off

『解析』 A. 该题考查四个动词短语的辨析及在语言交际中对它们的运用。get along(工作等)进行、进展;come on 开始、来临;watch out 小心、注意;set off 出发、使爆炸。答语语意为“不管怎么样,工作一直进行着”,选 A 合适。

4. 强调语境,体现能力立意的命题原则。

现在选择题在题目设置上强调语境,不单纯考查语法,而是将语法置于一定的语言环境中,答题时要在通读、分析、理解的基础上,把握语境,结合上下文,进行逻辑推理。

『典例 4』 You may drop in or just give me a call. _____ will do.(06 年安徽卷)

A. Either B. Each C. Neither D. All

『解析』 A. 在解答该题时,如果不注重语境,四个选项在语法上都是正确的,但从前句“你可以来,也可以给我打电话”可以看出,只有 A 项符合语境:任何一种方式都可以。

『典例 5』 Ladies and gentlemen, please fasten your seat belts. The plane _____. (06 年福建卷)

A. takes off B. is taking off C. has taken off D. took off

『解析』 该题考查动词的时态。如果仅看后一句,四个选项在语法上都是成立的,但前面的语境提示乘客要系好座位上的安全带,说明飞机即将起飞,应该用进行时表示将来。故 B 项是正确答案。

5. 多点考查,强调综合能力的考查。

分析 06 年全国及各个省市的英语试题可以看出,对考生的考查不仅仅局限于某个知识点,而是多点、多方位综合考查考生在特定语境中运用英语的能力。

『典例 6』 I have to go to work by taxi because my car _____ at the garage.

A. will be repaired B. is repaired C. is being repaired D. has been repaired

『解析』 C. 该题考查时态与语态。从句的主语 my car 与谓语动词 repair 是被动关系,所以可确定为被动语态;主句用的是一般现在时,可以看出强调的是现在的状况,所以要用现在完成时。故正确答案是 C。

『典例 7』 The moment the 28th Olympic Games _____ open, the whole world cheered. (06 年福建卷)

A. declared B. have been declared

C. have declared D. were declared

『解析』 D. 该题同时考查时态和语态。选项动词 declare 是及物动词,与主语



之间是被动关系,所以要用被动语态;从句的时态可以看出,declare 发生在过去,所以用一般过去时。

应试策略

一、能力培养

透视近年来高考对于单项填空题中的语法和词汇知识的考查,我们可以明显地感觉到,考查内容增加了对学科能力的测试,且更趋向多样化。既要求考生具有对英语语法知识和词汇知识的记忆、理解、掌握和运用能力;又要求其具有根据各题干所给的语境条件,进行分析、对比,灵活地使用能力。因此,考生在复习时应着重注意培养以下能力:

1. 培养理解和分析句子结构的能力。

抓基础必须先抓句子结构,牢固地掌握了句子结构,题目就可以迎刃而解了。历年高考都离不开结构分析题,而且结构分析在解题中起着很重要的作用。

『典例 1』 It's two years _____ he began to learn English.

- A. before B. since C. that D. when

『解析』 B。此题意在考查 It is some time since sb. did sth. 的固定句式,意为:"某人做某事已经有多久了"。

2. 培养在特定语境条件限制下对语法和词语知识灵活运用能力。

『典例 2』 I was really anxious about you. You _____ home without a word.

- A. mustn't leave B. shouldn't have left
C. couldn't have left D. needn't leave

『解析』 B。这类试题的四个备选项中,可能不止一个选项满足句子结构的语法需要。但在特定的语境中,只有一个选项无论从语法上还是意义上,都能满足句子的需要。可以将这类试题称为"语法或词语知识加情景交际"考查题。这类试题在近年来的高考中数量有所增加,体现了英语知识重在灵活使用的原则。

3. 培养同类词语不同用法的辨析能力。

『典例 3』 All the leading newspapers _____ the trade talks between China and the United States.

- A. reported B. printed C. announced D. published

解析 A。这类试题主要考查动词及词组、名词、形容词、副词、介词、连词等。解答这类试题时,首先要明确题干所表达的意思。其次,必须全面深刻地掌握备选项的词语意义。有时候,对于近似词语(形似或意近)还必须注意它们之间的细微差别。这类试题的主要考查方向是词语辨析,要求的是词语辨析能力。

4. 培养灵活使用英语习语和固定搭配的能力。

『典例 4』 —What about having a drink?
—_____

Among thousands of people, you meet those you've met.

佳句
欣赏



A. Good idea.

B. Help yourself.

C. Go ahead, please.

D. Me, too.

『解析』 A. 解答这类试题,既不特别需要语法知识,也不特别需要深奥的词汇知识。首先应弄清楚题干的语境条件,再理解备选答案的意思,从中选出符合题干要求的选项,这些往往是固定搭配或习惯用语。这是一类对情景交际能力的考查题。

二、高分策略

1. 不要受被动定式思维的影响

『典例 1』 May Day is such a day _____ is celebrated by the working people all over the world.

A. that

B. which

C. what

D. as

『解析』 D. 受思维定式的影响,有的同学一见到 such,就联想到 that,因而毫不犹豫地选择 A 项。实际上 such...that...表示“如此……以致于……”,that 在从句中作状语,而不作其他成分,而 such...as...意为“像……一样”,as 引导的是定语从句,as 在从句中作主语或宾语。本题后面的从句中正好缺主语。因此选 D 项。

2. 受母语负迁移的影响

『典例 2』 Excuse me for breaking in, _____ I have some news for you.

A. so

B. and

C. but

D. yet

『解析』 C. 本句的意思是:请原谅我的突然闯入,因为我有消息要告诉你。有些同学习惯将该句译为汉语,然后从母语的思维角度去做题,这样很容易误选 and。事实上,按照英语语言习惯,在表示道歉的话语中用来说明原因时只用 but,而不用 and 或其他词,因而选 C 项。

『典例 3』 We thought of selling this old furniture, but we've decided to _____ it. It might be valuable.

A. hold on to

B. keep up with

C. turn to

D. look after

『解析』 A. 受母语影响,大多数学生一看到 B 项中的 keep 就断定该项是“保留”的意思,因而选择 B 项。事实上 keep up with sth. 意为“熟悉,了解(消息、形势等)继续支付”,本题中只有 hold on to 是“不送(或不卖)某物”的意思,符合该题的题意,应该选 A。

3. 语言的平行问题

『典例 4』 —Were you busy last week?

—Very. Rather than _____ time playing cards as usual, I devoted every effort to _____ advertisement.

A. waste; making

B. waste; make

C. wasting; making

D. wasting; make

『解析』 C. 根据习惯,我们一看到 rather than 就会联想到 rather than do 的结构,而选 A,实际上, rather than 后面可接不同种类的词,原则上要求平行:应与和它相对



应的词(组)后面的用词平行, devote sth. to 后接名词或动名词, 故第一空用 wasting, 应选 C。类似的还有 than/as well as/not only... but also 等。

4. 对句子进行添加、组合或排序

我们在做题时,会遇到省略句、倒装句、插入语等,为了使选项符合题目要求,我们可把省略句补全,把倒装句重新组合成正常的语序,或把插入语去掉,然后再做题。

『典例 5』 They talked about the full use we should _____ our spare time when we learn English, which I think reasonable.

- A. make into B. make from C. make in D. make of

『解析』 D。从选项上看,该题似乎在考查以动词 make 为中心构成的短语的辨析,但我们仔细分析后可以看出并非如此。在定语从句中可以看出 use 是先行词,由于从句中 make 没有宾语,所以可以理解为作宾语的是关系代词,被省略了,那么把关系代词所代替的先行词 use 还原到从句中,就会出现一个短语 make full use of"充分利用"。这样答案 D 就明确了。

5. 合并句子

近年来有很多单项填空题都是以简短对话形式出现的,我们在答题时可以将两个句子合并到一起进行分析,这样往往更容易找出答案。

『典例 6』 —What should I do with this passage ?

—_____ the main idea of each paragraph.

- A. Finding out B. Found out C. Find out D. To find out

『解析』 C。如果将上下句合并成一个完整的句子,那么该句为"You should find out the main idea of each paragraph"。故 C 项正确。

6. 标点符号的提示

在解题时要注意句中小小的标点符号,事实上标点符号对我们解题大有帮助。

『典例 7』 "You can't catch me!" Janet shouted, _____ away.

- A. run B. running C. to run D. ran

『解析』 B。本题中所给选项与前面谓语动词有逗号隔开,说明它们并不是并列谓语,故可排除 D。事实上,本题用动词-ing 形式作伴随状况,答案为 B。

『典例 8』 Peter has many friends; _____ can help him.

- A. few of which B. few of whom C. few of that D. few of them

『解析』 D。分号将两个独立的分句隔开,前后分句为并列关系,不需要用并列词,故选 D。如果将分号改为逗号,就成为复合句,选 B 才正确。

7. 熟词新义

平时应尽量多地掌握单词和词组的意义及用法,不可仅仅局限于课本。

『典例 9』 We didn't plan our art exhibition like that but it _____ very well.

- A. worked out B. tried out C. went out D. carried on

『解析』 A。work out 在通常情况下作"算出"讲,但此在意为"产生结果 结果是"。

Through thousands of years, with the boundlessness of time, you happen to meet them, neither earlier nor a bit late.



专题突破

专题一 名词与冠词



考点聚焦

1. 对名词的考查主要是考查名词的数、抽象名词具体化、名词的所有格以及词义辨析。考点主要集中在以下几个方面：

- ★ 名词的单复数变化,尤其是一些特殊名词的复数形式。
- ★ 常见的不可数名词在语境中的运用。
- ★ 名词的所有格。
- ★ 同义词和近义词的辨析。

2. 冠词是历年高考英语试题的必考点,和名词密不可分。主要考查其基本用法,包括定冠词和不定冠词的用法区别,名词前不用冠词的情况,特指与泛指以及习语中冠词的用法。



重点突破



重点 1 名词的数

1. 名词的单复数

(1) 可数名词的复数构成方式如下：

规则名词复数变化		
分类	构成方式	例词
一般情况	在词尾直接加-s	book→books, letter→letters
以字母 o 结尾	加-es	hero→heroes, tomato→tomatoes
	加-s	zoo→zoos, kilo→kilos
以 f 或 fe 结尾	变 f 或 fe 为-ves	thief→thieves, life→lives; 注意: chief→chiefs, roof→roofs, belief→beliefs
以 s, x, ch, sh 结尾	在词尾加-es	class→classes, box→boxes, watch→watches, bush→bushes
以辅音字母 + y 结尾的词	变 y 为 i 加-es	country→countries, party→parties



以元音字母 + y 结尾的词	加-s	boy→boys , toy→toys
复合名词	把中心词变为相应的复数	passer-by→passers-by , sister-in-law→sisters-in-law
不规则名词复数变化		
分类	构成方式	例词
由 man/woman 作定语的词	把 man/woman 及中心词均变为复数	a woman doctor→women doctors
不规则变化名词	变化不规则	child→children , mouse→mice
单复数相同的名词	单复数相同	means , sheep , deer , aircraft , cattle , Chinese
某些外来词	改变词尾	basis→bases , thesis→theses
含有-man 的词	变-man 为-men	Frenchman→Frenchmen , policeman→policemen 注意: German→Germans

『典例 1』 She went to the bookstore and bought _____. (06 年北京卷)

- A. dozen books B. dozens books C. dozen of books D. dozens of books

『解析』 D. dozen 表示"打,十二个", score 表示"二十", 两词与数词 a, many, several, some 连用修饰名词复数时, 都要用单数, 其后的介词 of 有无均可。如: many dozen books。两词的复数形式与 of 连用时表示不确切的数量, 意为"许多……, 大量的"如: dozens of books。故选 D。

(2) 不可数名词

不可数名词一般没有复数形式, 如果需要表示多少, 通常要用"a + 表数量的名词 + of + 名词"来表示, 其中表数量的名词可以根据需要用复数形式。通常抽象名词与物质名词都是不可数名词, 同时, 不可数名词之间的意义区别是名词重要的考点。常见的不可数名词有:

- ①物质名词: ice, coffee, soup, grass, cloth, clothing, iron, food, bread 等。
②抽象名词: advice, experience, courage, childhood, darkness, knowledge 等。

『典例 2』 We always keep _____ spare paper, in case we ran out. (06 年浙江卷)

- A. too much B. a number of C. plenty of D. a good many

『解析』 C. too much 修饰不可数名词, 意为"太多", 但不符合题意; a number of, a good many 都是修饰可数名词, plenty of 可修饰不可数名词和可数名词, 意为"大量, 充足"。paper 在此是不可数名词, 根据题意应选 C。

『典例 3』— Would you like _____, sir?

— No, thanks. I have had much.

- A. some more oranges B. any more oranges
C. some more orange D. any more orange

『解析』 C. 在表示建议或请求时用 some; 根据回答"I have had much"中的

Girls always look on themselves as proud princesses, with the exception of a small number of either extremely ugly or exceedingly smart ones.



much 可以推断 orange 在句中是不可数名词,作“果汁”讲。所以答案为 C。

2. 名词的复数类指与冠词

可数名词复数表示类指时,多不用冠词。如:

Books are very useful. 书籍是非常有用的。

Axes are sharp-edged tools for chopping wood. 斧头是砍木头的锋利工具。

『典例 4』 Everywhere man has cut down _____ forests in order to grow crops or to use _____ wood as fuel or as building material. (06 年重庆卷)

A. the ; the B. the ; / C. / ; the D. / ; /

『解析』 C。此题考查可数名词复数表示类指与不可数名词表示特指的用法。根据句意“人类到处砍伐森林,为的是种植庄稼或把木材作为能源或建筑材料来使用”,第一空因 forest 的复数形式表示类指,所以不用冠词;第二空 wood 是不可数名词,在此表示被砍伐的木材,表示特指,需用定冠词。

3. 在特殊情况下名词复数的使用

(1) 有些名词只有复数形式,而且也只作复数。常见的有 trousers, thanks, clothes, goods 等。

(2) 有些名词形式为复数,却用作单数。常见的有 physics, politics, mathematics 等。

(3) 有些短语中的名词必须用复数形式。如:

be in high spirits 兴致勃勃

do repairs 进行修理

fix one's eyes upon 关注;凝视

have words with sb. 与某人争吵



重点 2 名词所有格

英语中名词的所有格构成如下:

构成情况	举例
单数名词后加 's	a boy 's seat , the student 's bag
以-s 结尾的人名或复数名词后只加 ', 不再加 s, 否则加 's	Charles ' home , Teachers ' Day
表示时间、距离、机构、团体、地名以及可拟人化的名词后加 's	today 's newspaper , an hour 's work , China 's industry
指示代词/数量词 (a , two , some , no...) + 名词 + of + 名词所有格	some friends of my father 's , the lecture of Mr. Yang 's
注意: 无生命的名词(能拟人化的名词除外)可用 of 表示所属关系, 如 the windows of the classroom , the top of the mountain	

重点提示:

1. 所修饰的名词为商店、住宅或其他处所时,名词常省略。如: at the doctor 's (clinic) 在诊所, to my uncle 's (house) 到我叔叔家, in the manager 's (office) 在经理办公室。



2. 表示并列名词"共有某物"时,只在最后一个名词后加's;如果表示"各自所有"关系时,则在每个名词后加's。如:

America and England's problem 美英两国共同的问题

America's and England's problems 美英两国各自的问题

『典例 1』 The village is far away from here indeed. It's _____ walk.

A. a four hour B. a four hour's C. a four-hours D. a four hours'

『解析』 D。该题考查表示时间的名词的所有格。在非复合形容词中,中心名词应用复数,故 A、B 两项错误;在复合形容词中,中心名词应用单数,故 C 也不正确。因此正确答案为 D。

『典例 2』 —Does the hotel belong to Smith and John?

—No, it's _____.

A. the Turner's B. Tom's brother
C. Tom and Jack's D. Tom's and Jack's

『解析』 C。根据上下文语境可知该题中的 hotel 为 Tom 和 Jack 共同所有。故答案为 C。

『典例 3』 I got a new bicycle as a birthday gift sent by _____.

A. a friend of my father B. my father friend
C. my father friend's D. a friend of my father's

『解析』 D。当一个名词前有表示数量的词 a, two, some 等修饰时,可用"数量词+名词+of+名词所有格"构成双重所有格。故选 D。



重点 3 名词作定语

1. 用名词作定语修饰另一个名词,通常有以下几种情况:

- (1) 表示中心词的用途或职能,如: a coffee cup 一个咖啡杯
- (2) 表示发生或使用时间,如: afternoon tea 下午茶
- (3) 表示事物整体,如: the classroom door 教室的门
- (4) 表示性别或身份,如: a female elephant 母象
- (5) 表示性质和类别,如: the paper tiger 纸老虎

2. 作定语的名词要用单数形式,但要注意:

(1) man 和 woman 这两个词比较特殊,用单数还是复数取决于被它们所修饰的名词。如: a man doctor 一位男大夫; two men doctors 两位男大夫。但 girl 与 boy 作定语仍用单数形式,如: many boy students 许多男生。

(2) 有少数名词用其复数形式作定语。如: a clothes shop 一个服装店; a sports man 一位运动员。

(3) 少数以-s 结尾的单词作定语。如: a maths/physics/politics teacher 数学/物理/政治老师。

『典例 1』 He dropped the _____ and broke it.

A. cup of coffee B. coffee's cup C. cup for coffee D. coffee cup

It can be inferred that you lack confidence in a victory over your rivals from the fact that you're irritable against them.

佳句
欣赏



【解析】 D。根据句意打碎的是“咖啡杯”, coffee 作定语表示杯子的用途, 答案为 D。

【典例 2】 There are only two _____ assistants in that _____ shop.

A. woman ; shoe B. women ; shoe C. woman ; shoes ' D. women ; shoes '

【解析】 B。woman 作定语修饰的名词 assistants 是复数, 所以 woman 要用复数形式, shoe 作定语时用单数, 表示店的类别。



重点 4 不定冠词的用法

1. 不定冠词一般用在单数可数名词前表示某一个; 用在某些物质名词或抽象名词前, 表示“一种、一类、一份、一阵、一场”等。

【典例 1】 —I knocked over my coffee cup. It went right over _____ keyboard.

—You shouldn't put drinks near _____ computer. (06 年北京卷)

A. the ; / B. the ; a C. a ; / D. a ; a

【解析】 B。第一句表示说话者将自己的咖啡杯弄翻在自己使用的键盘上, 是表示特指, 第二句答复是表示一种建议“不应该将饮料放在电脑旁”, 用不定冠词表示泛指。

2. 另外还要注意以下用法:

(1) 指某人或某物, 但不具体说明何人或何物。如:

A Mr. Li came to see you yesterday. 昨天一位李先生来看望你。(不知那位李先生是谁)

【典例 2】 —I knew _____ John Lennon, but not _____ famous one.

A. / ; a B. a ; the C. / ; the D. the ; a

【解析】 B。由句意“我认识一个叫 John Lennon 的人, 但不是那个很有名的 John Lennon”可知, 第一空应用不定冠词 a 表示泛指一个名为 John Lennon 的人, 第二空用定冠词 the 特指那个很有名的 John Lennon。

(2) 三餐名词、表示独一无二的名词和专有名词前有形容词修饰时, 用不定冠词。如: I only want a small supper. 晚饭我只想一点东西。

【典例 3】 It is _____ world of wonders, _____ world where anything can happen.

A. a ; the B. a ; a C. the ; a D. / ; /

【解析】 B。世界上独一无二的事物前一般用定冠词, 但当此事物有定语修饰时, 用不定冠词, 第二空后的 world 是前一个 world 的同位语, 旨在进一步强调和说明。

(3) 有时在星期、月份和日期前加不定冠词, 表示一种泛指。如: on a Friday 在一个个星期五; a very wet April 一个雨水很多的四月。

(4) 有时在序数词前加不定冠词, 表示“再次”“又一个”。如:

Then a second man rose to speak. 接着又一个人起来发言。

(5) 用于短语搭配中。如: have/take a rest 休息一会儿; come to an end 结束; drop sb. a line 给某人写信等。

【典例 4】 After dinner he gave Mr. Richardson _____ ride to _____ Capital Airport.



A. the ; a B. a ; the C. / ; a D. / ; the

『解析』 B. give sb. a ride"送某人一程"为固定短语,第二空是普通名词构成的专有名词,其前应该用定冠词。



重点5 定冠词的用法

1. 定冠词可用在所有名词前,表示特指,这是定冠词的基本用法。如:

We enjoyed the beauty of nature. 我们欣赏大自然的美。

『典例1』 I know you don't like _____ music very much. But what do you think of _____ music in the film we saw yesterday ? (06年全国卷II)

A. / ; / B. the ; the C. the ; / D. / ; the

『解析』 D. music 是不可数名词,第一空不用冠词表示泛指,第二空的 music 后有介词短语修饰,表示特指,所以用定冠词。

2. 另外,定冠词还有以下用法:

(1) 用在某些可数名词单数前,用来指出事物的整体(总称)与其他事物的区别。如: The telephone was invented by Bell. 电话是贝尔发明的。

(2) 用在表示某国人的名词前,表示这个国家的人。如: the Chinese 中国人, the English 英国人; 用在某些形容词前,表示某一类人(表示复数)。如: the rich 富人, the poor 穷人, the blind 盲人, the strong 强者, the weak 弱者等。

(3) 在序数词、形容词最高级及形容词 only(惟一的), very(正是那个), same(同样的)等前面加定冠词 the。如:

It must be the only modern house in the district. 这一定是本地区惟一的一所现代化住宅。

『典例2』 Many people hold the view that _____ prison isn't _____ only cure for law-breakers.

A. a ; the B. / ; the C. the ; the D. the ; a

『解析』 B. prison 在此表示该概念而不是某一特定的事物,因此不用冠词; 形容词 only 前应用定冠词 the, 表示"惟一的一个"。

(4) 在表示独一无二的名词和表示方位、方向的名词前要用定冠词 the。如: the earth 地球, the sky 天空, the universe 宇宙, the world 世界等。

(5) 在江河、海洋、山脉、群岛、沙漠、海峡、海湾等专有名词前要用定冠词 the。如: the Yellow River 黄河, the Pacific 太平洋, the Red Sea 红海等。

(6) 在含有普通名词的专有名词前和表示某机关团体、阶级、党派等组织或机构的名称前及某些国名、报纸、会议、条约前要用定冠词 the。如:

the United Kingdom 联合王国, the House of Commons (英国)下议院

『典例3』 According to _____ World Health Organization, health care plans are needed in all big cities to prevent _____ spread of AIDS. (06年陕西卷)

A. the ; / B. the ; the C. a ; a D. / ; the

『解析』 B. 普通名词构成的专有名词前要用定冠词,所以第一空用 the; 第二

From that you would get angry with your friends, we can conclude you still care about the friendship between you.

佳句
欣赏



空 spread 后有介词短语限制,特指“艾滋病的传播”,所以也必须用定冠词。

(7)用在作为课程或演奏的乐器名称前用定冠词 the。但是,在中国乐器前不加 the。如 She plays the piano/violin well. 她钢琴/小提琴演奏得很好。

(8)在姓氏的复数形式前加定冠词 the 表示“一家人”。如 the Blacks 布莱克一家人。

(9)在“主语+动词+宾语+介词+the+身体部位名词”的固定句型中,要特别注意不能用物主代词替代定冠词,句中常用动词有 pat, strike, beat, hit, catch, put, take 等。如 He patted me on the back. 他拍了拍我的后背。

(10)用于逢十的年代前,表示某世纪中的几十年代。如 in the 1980s 在二十世纪八十年代。

(11)用于短语搭配中。如 in the end 最后; come to the point 谈到正题; on the contrary 相反等。



重点6 不用冠词的情况

1. 可数名词复数表示泛指以及抽象名词和物质名词表示一般概念时,通常不用冠词。如 Failure is the mother of success. 失败是成功之母。

2. 三餐、球类运动、娱乐名称、节日、星期、月份和日期前一般不用冠词,季节名词前用不用 the 意思没有什么区别。如:

What do you have for breakfast? 你早饭吃什么?

When (the) winter comes, everything begins to grow. 春天到,万物复苏。

3. 在学科、语言、称呼语、大部分疾病名称和表头衔的名词(作表语、同位语或补足语)前,不用冠词。如:

I think maths is more difficult than physics. 我认为数学比物理难。

4. man 和 woman 的单数表示泛指时,可以不用冠词。如:

Man is taller than woman. 男人比女人高。

注意:在现代英语中,一般说 a man, a woman 或 men, women。

5. 在 turn to(作“变成”讲)后作表语的名词,不用冠词。如:

He was a medical student before he turned writer. 他在成为作家之前是医学院的学生。

6. 在 as/though 倒装分句中,名词前不用冠词。如:

Child as/though Tom is, you can't fool him. 像汤姆这样的孩子,你不能欺骗他。

7. 在专有名词(洲名、人名、城市名、街道名、港口名、火车站名、公园名、机关及院校名)之前,一般不用冠词。如:Asia 亚洲; Mary 玛丽; Shanghai 上海; Wall Street 华尔街; Pearl Harbor 珍珠港等。

8. 在一些固定短语中。如 at night 在夜里; at home 在家; day after day 日复一日; go to church 去做礼拜等。

『典例1』 I like _____ history. I am studying _____ history of China.

A. /; a

B. the; /

C. /; the

D. a; /



『解析』 C。表示学科的名词前不用冠词,因此第一空不用冠词;当 history 有限定词修饰表示具体的某一段历史时,要用定冠词 the 表示特指,“the history of China 即“中国历史”。

『典例 2』 Hu Jintao, _____ president of China, is meeting _____ President of the United States tomorrow.

- A. a ; a B. the ; the C. / ; the D. / ; /

『解析』 C。该题中第一个 president 前不用冠词,作 Hu Jintao 的同位语;第二个 president 作宾语,其后有 of 短语修饰,因此要用定冠词 the 表示特指。故答案为 C。



难点解疑



难点 1 抽象名词具体化与冠词

英语中有一类名词一般情况下是不可数名词,但当它们被赋予了具体的含义后,可看作可数名词。这些名词没有复数形式,一般与不定冠词连用,意为“一个(件、次)……的人或事”。这就是我们说的“抽象名词具体化”。如:a danger 一件危险的事或一个危险的人;a failure 一件失败的事或一个失败的人;a must 一件必要的事或物。

注意:1. 抽象名词如有形容词修饰或表示一个人或一件具体的事时,用不定冠词。如:It's a pleasure to talk with you. 跟你谈话真是愉快。

2. 抽象名词如表示特指仍要用定冠词 the。如:

What do you think of the work? 你对这工作有什么看法?

『典例 1』 One way to understand thousands of new words is to gain _____ good knowledge of basic word formation.

- A. / B. the C. a D. one

『解析』 C。knowledge 常用作不可数名词,但在此题中,其后有 of 短语修饰,表示某一方面的知识,可与不定冠词连用,相当于 some。

『典例 2』 When you finish reading the book, you will have _____ better understanding of _____ life.

- A. a ; the B. the ; a C. / ; the D. a ; /

『解析』 D。understanding 本是不可数名词,在此受 of 短语和形容词 better 的修饰而具体化了,所以用不定冠词 a; 第二空 life 是抽象名词,不用冠词表示泛指。故答案为 D。



难点 2 冠词有无,意义不同

英语中,有些短语中有无冠词意义不同。如:by day 在白天,by the day 按天计算;in case of 以防,in the case of 就……来说;in charge of 负责,管理,in the charge of 由……负责;in office 执政,in the office 在办公室;in sight (of) 看见,in the sight (of) 在……看来;go to sea 当水手,go to the sea 到海边去等。

『典例 1』 _____ sick and _____ wounded are taken good care of in _____ hospital.

While our dream is confronted with the reality, you always feel painful. Just trample on the pain, or you'll be beat down by it.

佳句
欣赏



A. A ; a ; a B. / ; / ; / C. The ; the ; the D. The ; the ; /

『解析』 D。"the + 形容词"表示一类人,所以前面两个空用定冠词;in hospital 意为"住院"符合题意"病人和伤者在住院期间受到很好地照顾"。in the hospital 意为"在医院"不符合题意。

『典例 2』 This book tells _____ life story of John Smith , who left _____ school and worked for a newspaper at the age of 16.

A. the ; the B. a ; the C. the ; / D. a ; /

『解析』 C。该题中 life story 后有 of 短语修饰,所以第一空用定冠词表示特指;第二空考查 leave school 与 leave the school 的区别,leave school 意为"毕业,离校",leave the school 意为"离开学校",可能是暂时的。根据句意可知 leave school 符合此题语境。



难点 3 不定冠词与名词发音的关系

不定冠词 a 用于辅音音素前,如 a red apple ; a house ; a student ; a 6-year-old boy 等;an 用于元音音素前,如 an apple ; an hour ; an egg ; an 8-year-old boy 等。

要特别注意的是,用 a 还是 an 不是看其后的单词是否是以元音字母开头,而是看该单词的读音是否是以元音音素开始。如:在 a useful book 中,useful 虽然是以元音字母 u 开头,但其读音却以辅音音素 [j] 开头,所以须用 a。

『典例 1』 _____ girl making _____ ugly face is _____ European.

A. The ; an ; a B. The ; a ; an C. A ; the ; a D. The ; an ; an

『解析』 A。名词 girl 后有动词-ing 短语修饰,表示特指,用 the ;第二空应用不定冠词,泛指"做鬼脸",由于 ugly 的读音是以元音音素 [ʌ] 开头,所以要用 an ;第三空 European 虽然是以元音字母 E 开始,但读音是以辅音音素 [j] 开头,所以用 a。

『典例 2』 Mrs. Taylor has _____ 8-year-old daughter who has _____ gift for painting — she has won two national prizes.

A. a ; a B. an ; the C. an ; a D. the ; a

『解析』 C。第一空用不定冠词表示泛指,8-year-old 的读音是以元音音素 [ei] 开头,所以用 an ;第二空 have a gift for 为固定搭配,意为"对……有天赋"。



难点 4 特殊群体名词与谓语

特殊群体名词主要指集体名词。英语中的集体名词的"数"有三种情况:

1. "形单义复"的名词。这类集体名词作主语时,谓语动词用复数。如:cattle 牛;police 警察;people 人们(peoples 表示"各民族");youth 青年人(youths 表示"男青年们");folk 人们,平民百姓(总称)等。
2. "形单义单"的名词。这类集体名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数。如:baggage/luggage 行李;clothing 衣服;furniture 家具;machinery 机器;man/mankind 人类等。
3. 有些集体名词作整体看时,当单数讲;作一个个成员讲时,当复数讲,且形式不变。如:family 家;government 政府;group 组;team 队;class 班级;audience 听众等。



『典例1』 — _____ his family big?

—No, but his family _____ wonderful. They are always ready to help others.

A. Is ; are B. Are ; is C. Is ; is D. Are ; are

『解析』 A。根据上下文的含义可知第一空用单数表示整体,第二空用复数表示其家庭成员。故答案为A。

『典例2』 Some folk _____ never _____ with the present situation.

A. is ; satisfying B. are ; satisfied C. are ; satisfying D. is ; satisfied

『解析』 B。folk 是"形单义复"的集体名词,作主语时谓动词用复数,be satisfied with 是固定搭配,意为"对……满意"。



难点5 名词在不同语境中的辨析

对同义词和近义词的考查也是高考中的一个重点。我们平时要在阅读和运用中领悟词义,体会它们在不同语境中的细微差别。

『典例1』 To make members of a team perform better, the trainer first of all has to know their _____ and weaknesses. (06年湖北卷)

A. strengths B. benefits C. techniques D. values

『解析』 A。strength"力量,实力";benefit"利益,好处";technique"技术,技巧,手法";value"价值,实用性"。选项A符合句意:为了让每个组员更好地完成任务,教练首先得知道他们的实力和弱点。

『典例2』 At the meeting they discussed three different _____ to the study of mathematics. (06年湖北卷)

A. approaches B. means C. methods D. ways

『解析』 A。该题考查四个表示"方法"的名词的辨析。approach 意为"途径,方法,步骤",常与介词to连用,表示待人接物或思考问题的"方法,途径";means 单复数同形,意为"方法,手段,工具",指与"目的"相对立而存在着的"手段",尤指采用整套的方法,也可指使用某些工具、材料,乘坐某种交通工具等;method 所表示的"方法"可以指做某件事的具体步骤或程序,也可以指抽象概念"条理";way 概念最广泛,在口语中更常见,既可指具体的方法,也可指抽象的方式,既可指一般的方法,也可指个人独特的方式。根据题意,"数学学习的方法"需要思考,所以选A。



强化闯关

1. He walked up to _____ cupboard near the wall and reached out for _____ second tube.

A. the ; / B. the ; a C. a ; a D. the ; the

2. As is known to us, _____ life in the modern world is easier in some ways than _____ life our grandparents lived.

A. the ; the B. a ; the C. / ; the D. the ; a

3. Accounting is described as _____ science of classifying, recording, and reporting _____

There is someone that is coming or passing away in your life around the clock, so you may lose sight of those seen, and forget those remembered.

佳句
欣赏



important financial events.

- A. a ; the B. a ; / C. / ; / D. / ; the
4. —Do you think an advertisement is _____ help when you look for a new job ?
—Well , it all depends. Anyway , it gives me more of _____ chance to try.
A. a ; a B. the ; the C. a ; the D. / ; /
5. —What has happened here ?
—There was _____ accident here about an hour ago. _____ car hit a tree and _____ driver was killed.
A. the ; A ; the B. an ; A ; the C. an ; The ; a D. the ; The ; a
6. Charley Oakley , _____ NBA star , hasn 't lost _____ game in the past month.
A. an ; a B. a ; the C. the ; a D. an ; the
7. Nowadays , _____ mobile phone is _____ popular means of communication.
A. the ; a B. a ; / C. the ; the D. a ; a
8. Ted couldn 't remember the exact date of the hurricane , but he knew it was _____ Sunday because everybody was at _____ church.
A. / ; the B. a ; / C. the ; a D. / ; /
9. The party was _____ success. We sang and danced until it came to _____ end at midnight.
A. a ; an B. a ; the C. the ; an D. / ; an
10. The _____ of the south 's weather is that it is rainy in spring and warm in winter.
A. character B. characteristic C. particular D. particularity
11. You should throw these old magazines and newspapers into _____ .
A. the papers basket B. a paper basket
C. papers basket D. paper basket
12. In the after-class activities , the students had plenty of _____ and gained a lot of practical _____ .
A. experience ; experiences B. practices ; experience
C. practice ; experience D. exercise ; knowledges
13. — Hello , Jack , where were you last night ?
— _____ . We were talking about the disaster happened in the day.
A. At the Roberts ' B. To the Roberts C. To Roberts D. At the Roberts
14. He is provided with _____ . He needs various _____ .
A. food ; food B. food ; foods C. foods ; foods D. foods ; food
15. — Oh , you look very pretty !
— Thank you , but I have _____ .
A. a little white hair B. some white hairs
C. much white hair D. quite a few white hair



答案与解析

1. B. cupboard 后有介词短语 near the wall 修饰, 所以应用定冠词表示特指; 根据句意 "他走向靠墙的那个柜子, 伸手又取了一个试管" 可知 second 不是表示顺序, 所以用 a 表示 "又一"。
2. C. 第一空用 a 泛指 "生活", 第二空后的 life 受到定语从句的修饰, 所以要用定冠词表示特指。
3. B. science 本是不可数名词, 但在该题中被介词短语修饰, 用不定冠词表示 "会计学是一门分类、记录的科学"; 第二空表泛指, 不用冠词。
4. A. 根据上下文语境可以知道, 句中的两个名词 help 和 chance 都用作可数名词, 表示泛指, 所以应用不定冠词。
5. B. 根据句意第一、第二空均为泛指, 没有特指 "哪起事故或哪一辆车", 所以用不定冠词; 第三空则特指出事的司机, 应用定冠词 the。
6. A. star 和 game 都是可数名词, 根据语境, 第一空表示泛指, NBA 中 N 的发音以元音音素开头, 所以用不定冠词 an; 后半句意为 "未失一局", 应用不定冠词表泛指。
7. A. mobile phone 为发明物, 前面常用定冠词; means 单复数同形, 在此泛指 "一种流行的通讯方式", 应用不定冠词。
8. B. 第一空用不定冠词 a 表示 "某一"; 第二空 at church 为固定短语, 意为 "做礼拜"。
9. A. 根据句意, 抽象名词 success 在此具体化, 与不定冠词 a 连用, 表示 "一次成功的晚会"; come to an end 为固定短语, 意为 "结束"。
10. B. character 意为 "与其他不同的特点、特征(的总和)"; characteristic 意为 "特征, 特性, 特色"; particular 意为 "细节, 突出之处"; particularity 指 "奇异或不寻常的东西, 特殊性", 作 "特征" 解时, 应该用复数形式。这里显然是指南方天气的特征, 是自身的一大特色, 因此, 正确答案为 B 项。
11. B. 名词作定语用单数形式; 又因为 basket 为可数名词单数, 所以应用不定冠词表示泛指。
12. C. 此题考查名词是否可数。practice 和 knowledge 都是不可数名词, 可以排除 B、D; experience 既可作可数名词 "经历" 讲, 也可作不可数名词 "经验" 讲。根据句意此处应为 "经验", 是不可数名词。故正确答案为 C。
13. A. "to + 地点" 表示 "到/去过……", 不合语境; the 与姓氏的复数形式连用, 表示 "夫妇或一家人", 这里是指 the Roberts 的家, 应用名词所有格形式。当所修饰的名词为住宅或其他处所时, 名词所有格后的名词常省略。
14. B. 根据句意 "向他提供食物, 他需要各种各样的食物" 可知第一空用 food 泛指食物, 第二空用 food 的复数 foods, 表示各种各样的 "食物"。
15. B. hair 作为不可数名词指头发整体, 作为可数名词用时, 指几根头发。

There is gain and loss in your life, so you may catch sight of those unseen, and remember those forgotten.



专题二 动词和动词短语



考点聚焦

对动词和动词短语的考查是高考的一大热点,在每年的高考中都会出现。主要考查动词词义辨析、动词短语辨析、动词词义活用、部分动词的特殊用法等。



重点突破



重点 1 常见动词的辨析

1. **admit, allow, permit, let, promise** "允许,许可"

(1) **admit** 意为"允许进入,接收(纳)",及物动词,常和介词 to, into 连用;有时指在外界压力下不得不"承认"错误或事实。

(2) **allow** 是日常用语,语气比 **permit** 弱,有"允许,准许"之意,有消极的意味;常用 **allow sb. to do sth.** 和 **allow doing sth.** 结构。

(3) **permit** 意为"允许",语气较强,强调"正式认可,批准",含有积极的意味。

注意:虽然 **allow** 和 **permit** 在含义上有所差别,但在实际运用中二者常通用。

(4) **let** 用于非正式场合,听起显得亲切,随便。但没有 **permit** 和 **allow** 客气、郑重。不能用于被动语态。后接不带 to 的动词不定式作宾补。

(5) **promise** 作"答应、允诺"讲,表示主语答应自己要做某事。

『典例 1』 Mary wanted to travel around the world all by herself, but her parents did not _____ her to do so. (06 年全国卷 II)

A. forbid B. allow C. follow D. ask

『解析』 B。根据句意"玛丽想自己周游世界,但她父母不让她这样",B 项符合语境,allow 后接不定式作宾语补足语。

2. **advise, persuade, recommend, suggest** "建议"

《
试
题
调
研
》
(
第
二
辑
)

(1) **advise** 是一般用语,指某人以自己的切身经验提出有益的良言,以免发生意外,不强调是否成功。

(2) **persuade** 意为"劝说,说服",强调劝说成功。常用于 **persuade sb. to do sth.** 或 **persuade sb. into doing sth.**。

(3) **recommend** 表示"劝告",与 **advise** 同义,常与 **advise** 换用。

(4) **suggest** 语气较为委婉,指提出建议、计划、想法让别人去思考、去做,但比较踌躇,而且也不竭力坚持;后接动名词或从句(从句要用虚拟语气)。

『典例 2』 —How do you _____ we go to Beijing for our holiday?

—I think we'd better fly there. It's much more comfortable.

A. insist B. want C. suppose D. suggest



佳句
欣赏

生命中,不时的有得有失。于是,看不见的,看见了;遗忘的,记住了。

『解析』 D。suggest 表示"建议",后接的宾语从句谓语要用(should +)动词原形。

3. affect, effect, influence "影响"

(1) affect 强调某事物对另一事物或某人的客观影响,其宾语是人时,通常指感情或智力方面的影响。

(2) effect 在词形上容易与 affect 混淆。作名词用时,着重指影响所产生的结果、效果等;作动词用时,意为"引起,产生,实现,完成"。

(3) influence 指对某人的思想、观念、心理等内在的东西产生潜移默化的影响,或对某人的决定、行为造成某种程度的影响,也可指某种自然的影响。influence 可用作名词或动词。

『典例 3』 —Jean's mother died last night.

—No wonder her spirit has been _____ greatly.

A. effected B. affected C. caused D. influenced

『解析』 B。句意是"珍妮的妈妈昨晚去世了""难怪她的情绪受到很大影响",根据语境指她母亲的去世对她的情感造成的客观影响,所以选 B 项。cause 意为"引起,造成",influence 强调的是对人内在的东西产生潜移默化的影响;effect 与题意不符。

4. afford, offer, provide, supply "给,供给"

(1) afford 指为一定的目的而提供所需的东西。

(2) offer 为一般用语,指某人由于礼貌或需要,主动向某人提供物品、意见、条件等。常用 offer sb. sth. 或 offer sth. to sb. 结构。

(3) provide 主要指为某人、某物供应某物品,尤指生活必需品。常用 provide sb. with sth. 和 provide sth. for sb. 句型。

(4) supply 为普通用语,常与介词 with 连用。常指提供不足或缺乏的东西。

『典例 4』 I'd love to go on the voyage to Tahiti with Robin, but I doubt if we could _____ something like that.

A. afford B. offer C. permit D. supply

『解析』 A。afford sth. 意为"负担得起",符合题意"我想同罗宾到塔希提岛去航海,但我怀疑我们是否负担得起那样的开支"。其他选项不合题意,offer"提供,出价",permit"允许",supply"提供,供给"。

5. become, get, go, grow, turn "变得,变成"

(1) grow 强调逐渐变化的过程。

(2) become, get 通常表示事情已经完成,get 比较口语化,多强调结果或天气变化,become 可用于人和事物,并与大部分不同类型的形容词连用,还可接名词(可与冠词连用)。

(3) turn 接名词时名词前的冠词省略,强调结果变化,与以前完全不同。

(4) go 多指向坏的方面转变,可能是永久性或难以扭转的。

『典例 5』 Someone who lacks staying power and perseverance is unlikely to _____

Nevertheless, doesn't the unseen exist for sure? Will the remembered remain for ever?

佳句
欣赏

动词与
动词短
语



a good researcher. (06 年山东卷)

- A. make B. turn C. get D. grow

『解析』 A。make 也有“成为”的意思,在此处指“成为一名……”。如:If you work hard, you will make a good sailor. 如果你肯努力,你将会成为一个好水手。

6. cut, harm, hurt, injure, wound "伤害,受伤"

(1) cut 指无意中造成的轻伤。

(2) harm 表示人受到的心理、健康、权利或事业上的损害,程度较轻。

(3) hurt 为普通用语,既可指肉体上受到的伤害(可用 badly, slightly, seriously 等修饰),也可指精神上、感情上受到的伤害(可用 very much/rather/deeply 等修饰)。

(4) injure 比 hurt 正式,主要指意外事故中损害健康、容貌等,强调功能的损失。

(5) wound 指枪伤、刀伤、刺伤等皮肉之伤,是出血的、严重的伤,尤其指用武器有意造成的伤口、伤疤或在战场上所受的伤,也可喻指人们精神上受到的创伤。

『典例 6』 Mike didn't play football yesterday because he had _____ his leg. (06 年全国卷 I)

- A. damaged B. hurt C. hit D. struck

『解析』 B。该题中“伤了腿”表示肉体上的伤害,所以用 hurt。damage 指“损坏”,一般暗示损坏后价值或效益降低,这种损坏是部分性的,也可指身体、声誉的损坏;hit 指“打中”或“对准……来打”,敲打或打击对方的某一点;strike 通常表示“打一下,打若干下”的意思,不一定都是有意的。

7. say, speak, talk, tell "说"

(1) say 强调说话的内容和连续性,一般用作及物动词,但不能接双宾语。

(2) speak 相当于汉语的“说话”,强调“说”的动作,一般用作不及物动词,但在表示“说某种语言”时,speak 是及物动词。

(3) talk “说话”,至少在两个人之间进行,一般作不及物动词。

(4) tell “告诉”,用作及物动词,后接双宾语。

『典例 7』 —What should I do first? (06 年浙江卷)

—The instructions _____ that you should mix flour with water carefully first.

- A. go B. tell C. write D. say

『解析』 D。该题空格后是 that 引导的宾语从句。go 是不及物动词,所以排除;tell 后接双宾语,也可排除;write 不接宾语从句。say 在此意为“显示,表明”。



重点 2 动词的固定搭配及使用辨析

动词的固定搭配及使用辨析是每年高考中的重要考点。现将 06 年各地高考题中考查的动词短语进行归纳,请认真辨析它们之间的区别。

1. break 构成的常见短语

break up 分裂,结束,解散; break out 逃脱,逃出(战争、火灾、疾病等)突然发生; break of 除去(某人的)坏习惯; break into 闯入,突然……起来; break in 闯入,强行进入; 打断,插嘴; break down 停止运行,坏掉,破坏,拆散,把……分解; break away 逃走,



逃脱 摆脱 放弃 ;break one's promise 食言。

『典例 1』 The computer system _____ suddenly while he was searching for information on the Internet. (06 年辽宁卷)

- A. broke down B. broke out C. broke up D. broke in

『解析』 A. 根据句意“他在网上搜寻信息时,计算机系统突然坏了”,break down 坏掉,停止运行,符合句意。break out 爆发;break up 分裂,结束,解散;break in 闯入,打断。均不符合题意。

2. call 构成的常见短语

give (someone) a call 给某人打电话 ;on call 随时待命的,待用的,随叫随到的 ;call for 需要,要求 ;call up 打电话,使回忆 ;call at 访问(后接表示地点的名词或代词) ;call on/upon 约请,拜访(后接表示人的名词或代词) ;call in 请……来,收回 ;call off 取消(某活动),下令停止(举动)。

『典例 2』 As I grew up in a small town at the foot of a mountain, the visit to the village _____ scenes of my childhood. (06 年湖北卷)

- A. called up B. called for C. called on D. called in

『解析』 A. 该题考查 call 构成的相关短语。call up 打电话,使回忆,符合句意 ;call for 需要,要求 ;call on/upon 约请,拜访(后接表示人的名词或代词) ;call in 请……来,收回。

3. come 构成的常见短语

come across 留下……的印象,偶然遇到 ;come after 跟在……后面 ;come around = come round 短暂访问(尤指某人的家),恢复知觉,再次出现 ;come at 向……袭击,考虑 ;come by 得到,短暂拜访 ;come down 下降,流传下来,下跌 ;come through 传来,履行诺言 ;come to 涉及,达到,总共 ;come up to 达到(某点) ;come up with 赶上,想出(计划、答案等) ;come upon 偶遇,偶然发现。

『典例 3』 It's already 10 o'clock. I wonder how it _____ that she was two hours late on such a short trip. (06 年湖北卷)

- A. came over B. came out C. came about D. came up

『解析』 C. come over 顺便来访 ;come out 出去(照片)冲洗,泄漏,褪色 ;come about 发生 ;come up 走近,被提及。根据句意“已经 10 点了,我很奇怪,她怎么会在这这么短的旅程中迟到两个小时”,选项 C 正确。

『典例 4』 —Four dollars a pair? I think it's a bit too much.

—If you buy three pairs, the price for each will _____ to three fifty. (06 年安徽卷)

- A. come down B. take down C. turn over D. go over

『解析』 A. 上句说“四美元一双?我认为有点贵”,用 come down(价格)降下来,符合答语“如果你买三双,每双的价格将下降到三点五美元”。take down 拿下,记下,拆卸 ;turn over 周转,移交给,反复考虑 ;go over 仔细检查,复习。

4. die 构成的常见短语

die away(声音、光、风等)逐渐消失 ;die down(慢慢地)熄灭,平静下来 ;die from

Everyone has his inherent ability which is easily concealed by habits, blurred by time, and eroded by laziness.



死于(常表示因外部、偶然原因而死,也可表示因疾病而死);die of 死于(表示由于内部原因、疾病而死);die off 相继死去;die out 灭绝,绝种。

『典例 5』 Although the wind has _____, the rain remains steady. So you still need a raincoat. (06 年湖北卷)

- A. turned up B. gone back C. died down D. blown out

『解析』 C。turn up 调大(音量),出现;go back 回去;die down 变弱,逐渐停止;blow out 被(风等)吹熄,吹灭。C 项符合句意“虽然风已停息,但雨还在下,所以你仍需要一件雨衣”。

5. get 构成的常见短语

get along/on (with) 进展,过日子,相处;get away (from) 走开,离开;get back 回来,取回;get down to 开始认真干某事(to 为介词,后接动词时用-ing 形式);get off 下班,动身;get on 上车;get on with sb. 与某人相处;get together 相聚,联欢;get across 使理解;get hold of 抓住;get through 设法处理,完成。

『典例 6』 —The boss said we had only three days to finish the work.

—Don't worry. We have already _____ two thirds of it. (06 年四川卷)

- A. got down B. got through C. given in D. given away

『解析』 B。上句说“老板说我们只有三天时间来完成工作”,回答“别急。我们已经完成了三分之二了”,所以选 B 项符合句意。其他选项不合题意。

6. take 构成的常见短语

take away 拿走;take care 留心,当心;take after 长相或举止像(某个长辈);take back 收回(所说的话);撤回;take...for 认为,误认为;take off 脱下,起飞;take over 接管;take up 占用;take it easy 放心,别着急;take part in 参加。

『典例 7』 After he retired from office, Rogers _____ painting for a while, but soon lost interest. (06 年山东卷)

- A. took up B. saved up C. kept up D. drew up

『解析』 A。take up 开始从事,符合句意“罗杰斯退休后,他开始进行一段时间的绘画,但不久就失去了兴趣”。save up 储蓄,贮存;keep up 维持,继续;draw up 草拟。

『典例 8』 We're trying to ring you back, Bryan, but we think we _____ your number incorrectly. (06 年浙江卷)

- A. looked up B. took down C. worked out D. brought about

『解析』 B。take down 记下,符合题意“我们在试图给你回电话,但我们认为记错了你的号码”。look up 查找;work out 算出;bring out 导致,引起。

7. turn 构成的常见短语

turn against 反对;turn down 拒绝,调低(音量);turn...into...(使).....变成;turn out 在场,结果是;制造,赶走;turn out to be 原来是;turn round = turn around 转身,翻转,扭转,有起色;turn up 到来,露面,出现,被找到;take turns 轮流,依次;in turn 逐个地。

『典例 9』 With no one to _____ in such a frightening situation, she felt very help-



less. (06 年陕西卷)

- A. turn to B. turn on C. turn off D. turn over

『解析』 A。根据句意“在如此令人恐怖的情况下无人可求助,她感到非常无助”,turn to 在此意为“向……求助”,符合句意。另外 turn to 还有“翻到,转到,变成”之意,turn off /on 关上/打开(收音机,电灯等),turn over 翻转,移交。

8. look 构成的常见短语

look after 照顾, look for 寻找, look out 当心, 小心, look up 向上看, 仰望(在词典、书中)查寻, look forward to 朝前看, 盼望, look on/upon 看待, look through 仔细检查, 浏览, look into 向……里看去, 调查。

『典例 10』 _____ this book and tell me what you think of it.

- A. Look through B. Look on C. Look into D. Look up

『解析』 A。该题重在考查由 look 构成的短语的辨析。look through 快速查看, 浏览; look on 旁观; look into 调查, 审查; look up 好转, 改善。

9. pick 构成的常见短语

pick off 摘下, 剪除, pick on 故意刁难挑剔, 选定, pick up 学会, 拾起, 改善, 整理, 获得, 收听, pick out 挑选, 找出。

『典例 11』 She _____ Japanese when she was in Japan. Now she can speak it freely.

(06 年福建卷)

- A. picked out B. made out C. made up D. picked up

『解析』 D。pick up 在此意为“学会”,符合题意“她在日本时学会了日语,现在能流利地说日语”。make out 说明, 设法应付, 理解, 辨认出, make up 弥补, 虚构, 组成, 化妆。

10. set 构成的常见短语

set an example to 为……树立榜样, set about 着手(开始)做某事, set aside 把……放在一边, 留出, set down 让下车, 记下, set free 释放, set off/out 出发, set to work 开始干, set up 安排, 建立, 开办。

『典例 12』 For all these years I have been working for others. I 'm hoping I 'll _____ my own business someday. (06 年江西卷)

- A. turn up B. fix up C. set up D. make up

『解析』 C。set up 意为“建立, 成立”,符合题意“这么多年来我一直为别人做事。我希望将来有一天能成立自己的公司”。turn up 到来, 露面, 出现, 被找到, fix up 安顿, 修理, make up 组成, 编成, 弥补, 化妆。



重点 3 两种常错常考的可作谓语的动词

1. 几组拼写形式相同或相似的动词

▲ fall-fell-fallen (跌倒) fell-felled-felled (砍伐, 击倒) feel-felt-fel (感觉)

▲ find-found-found (发现) found-founded-founded (建立, 成立)

▲ hang-hanged-hanged (绞死) hang-hung-hung (悬挂)

▲ lay-laid-laid (放置, 下蛋) lie-lied-lied (说谎) lie-lay-lain (位于, 躺)

I don't need anybody to pull my weight.



▲raise (vt. 提高, 升起) rise (vi. 上升)

『典例 1』 The manager had fallen asleep where he _____, without undressing.

A. was laying B. was lying C. had laid D. had lied

『解析』 B。根据句意应该填 lie(躺), 用过去进行时, lie 的现在分词是 lying。

A 项中 laying 是 lay 的现在分词, 意为“放, 下蛋”。

2. 及物动词易被错用为不及物动词

address(误为 address to) approach(误为 approach with)

enter(误为 enter into) marry(误为 marry with)

reach(误为 reach to) salute(误为 salute to)

fit(误为 fit with) match(误为 match with)

gather(误为 gather with) forgive(误为 forgive for)

『典例 2』 My brother is very tall. The little bed won't _____ for him.

A. prepare B. match C. fit D. do

『解析』 D。根据句子结构, 可以排除 A、B 两项, match 和 fit 作动词时是及物动词, 后不需接介词 for; do 作为不及物动词意为“行, 合适”, 符合题意。又如:

—Will that do? 那样行吗?

—That'll do/won't do. 行/不行。



难点解疑



难点 五种基本句型中动词的使用

1. 主语 + 谓语

用在这一句型中的谓语动词都是不及物动词, 如 work, swim, go, look, happen, sit, arrive 等。

『典例 1』 It was already past midnight and only three young men _____ in the tea house. (06 年安徽卷)

A. left B. remained C. delayed D. deserted

『解析』 B。remain 作不及物动词, 意为“逗留”, 符合题意; leave“离开, 留下, 出发”; delay“延期, 耽搁”; desert“遗弃, 逃跑, 放弃”。

2. 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语

用在这一句型中的谓语动词都是及物动词, 如 attempt, dare, decide, desire, expect, hope, intend, learn, need, offer, pretend, promise 等。

『典例 2』 —Sorry to _____ you, but could I ask a quick question?

—No problem.

A. worry B. prevent C. trouble D. disappoint

『解析』 C。worry sb. “使某人担心”; prevent“阻止”; trouble sb. “打扰某人”; disappoint sb. “使某人失望”。根据语境选 C, “很抱歉打扰你了”。

3. 主语 + 系动词 + 表语

用在这一句型中除了 be 动词外, 还有一些动词也可以用作系动词:



- (1) 表感官的动词 feel, smell, taste, sound, look, appear, seem 等。
 (2) 表转变、变化的动词 become, get, grow, turn, go 等。
 (3) 表延续的动词 remain, keep, hold, stay, rest 等。
 (4) 表瞬时的动词 come, fall, set, cut, occur 等。
 (5) 其他动词 eat, lie, prove, ring, run, shine, sit, continue, hang 等。

『典例 3』 On hearing the news of the accident in the coal mine, she _____ pale.

- A. got B. changed C. went D. appeared

『解析』 C。go 作系动词表“变得”，多由好变坏。

4. 主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语

用在这一句型中的动词主要有: allow, bring, deny, give, hand, leave, lend, offer, owe, pass, pay, permit, promise, read, refuse, show, teach, wish, write, buy, choose, fetch, get, make 等。

『典例 4』 They 've _____ us \$ 150 000 for the house. Shall we take it?

- A. provided B. supplied C. shown D. offered

『解析』 D。A、B 两项动词后不能接双宾语; C 项与句意“他们已向我们出价 150 000 美元买这座房子, 我们接受吗”不符。故答案为 D, offer“出价, 报价”。

5. 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

常用于这一句型的动词有: allow, advice, beg, call, cause, choose, command, decide, encourage, expect, find, have, hear, leave, like, love, make, name, notice, keep, wish, order, permit, persuade, prefer, remain, request, teach, tell 等。

『典例 5』 If anyone happens to drop in while I am out, _____ him or her leave a message.

- A. have B. get C. ask D. tell

『解析』 A。have sb. do sth. “让某人做某事”, 其他三个选项动词都必须用带 to 的不定式作宾补, 不符合该题的结构要求。



强化闯关

- I feel really disappointed not to have got that job.
—Don't worry, maybe something better will _____.
A. go by B. take on C. come along D. fall down
- Seeing everybody seated, the chairman _____ to giving his speech.
A. got down B. looked forward C. got used D. devoted himself
- Lily _____ in a big city while her twin sister, Lucy was _____ in a small village by her grandmother.
A. grew up; grown up B. brought up; grown up
C. was grown up; brought up D. grew up; brought up
- We had a really bad time about six months ago but now things are _____.



- A. looking up B. coming up C. making up D. turning up
5. —When you come to _____ the scene, isn't it disappointing to find a McDonald's in every town?
—Well, people can have different tastes.
- A. think of B. think out C. think over D. think up
6. The two companies have _____ their disagreements out of court in a friendly way, and this is what we expected to see.
- A. settled B. solved C. worked out D. overcome
7. \$ 100 a month could hardly _____ the cost of his life in such a big city in this country.
- A. spend B. take C. cover D. meet
8. When Gisli was very young, he was terribly frightened of snakes, but he soon _____ it.
- A. got over B. got across C. got through D. got off
9. There was an oil painting _____ in the corner. It _____ there for several days.
- A. laying; had laid B. lain; had laid
C. lying; had lain D. laid; had been lain
10. Rock singers, on the other hand, _____ music their life. They _____ music to satisfy their inner desire.
- A. record; sing B. make; record C. play; play D. make; play
11. The inspector _____ his fingers over the sheet of newspaper. There were some marks on the surface of the paper.
- A. turned B. set C. held D. ran
12. They have _____ most carefully the time and money needed to complete the project.
- A. picked out B. left out C. figured out D. taken out
13. The girl _____ to be a good dancer if she is well trained in an art school.
- A. expects B. allows C. wishes D. promises
14. You look not a bit older than you did 5 years ago. How do you _____ so young?
- A. change B. grow C. become D. stay
15. The students spent as much time getting trained as they _____ studying.
- A. disliked B. were C. had D. did

《 试题调研 》



答案与解析

《 第二辑 》

- (1) C. go by 过去, 依照; take on 呈现, 具有, 接纳; come along 出现, 跟随, 进步; fall down 倒下。C 项符合句意"别着急, 更好的工作也许会到来"。
- (2) A. get down to doing sth. 着手做某事; look forward to 期待, 期望; get used to 习惯于; devoted to 专心于。A 项符合句意"看到所有人都入席了, 主席开始演讲"。
- (3) D. grow up 长大; bring up 带大, 扶养。grow up 是不及物动词词组, 没有被动语态。
- (4) A. look up 向上看, 尊敬, 拜访, 好转。在此句中 look up 意为"好转"; come up 走



近 发芽 发生 ,make up 和解 化妆 编造 虚构(故事、诗等) 弥补 ,turn up 被找到 , 出现 露面 把声音开大。

5. A. 本题考查 think 构成的短语的用法。think of 想到 想起 ,think out 想出 ,设计出 ; think over 仔细考虑 ,think up 想出 发明 捏造。句意是 :当想起每个城镇都有麦当劳店的情景的时候 ,你不感到失望吗 ?
6. A. 根据句意 "这两家公司之间的争端在庭外和解了 ,这也正是我们所盼望看到的结果" ,A 项 settle 解决(争端、分歧等)符合题意 ;solve 和 work out 解决(难题、困难、谜语等) ;overcome 克服(困难、缺点等)。
7. C. cover = be enough for 此题易误选 D ,meet 意为 "支付 偿付" ,其主语一般是人。
8. A. get over 克服 ,get across 被理解 ,使人了解 ;get through 接通(电话) ,让人了解 ,完成 ,get off 下班 动身。由句子意思可知 ,A 为正确答案。
9. C. 此题考查 lie 和 lay 的具体用法。第一空应该作定语修饰 painting ,可用两种形式 :一是 lying 是 lie 的现在分词 表示状态 ;二是 laid 是 lay(放置)的过去分词 ,与 painting 之间是被动关系。但第二空只能是 had lain。lain 是 lie(躺)的过去分词 ,没有被动形式。
10. D. make 后接复合宾语 ,意为 "使成为....." ;play 演奏(乐器、乐曲) ;record 和 play 后均不可接复合宾语 ,故排除 A、C ;record 意为 "录制" ,不符合语意 ,故排除 B。
11. D. 此题考查动词在特定语境中的使用。题干中第二个分句的意思是 :在纸面上有一些痕迹。run 在此句中的意思是 "使.....快速移动"。
12. C. pick out 挑出 选出 ;leave out 漏掉 ;figure out 算出 ;take out 拿出 取出。句意为 :他们十分仔细地算出了完成工程所需要的时间和资金。故应选 C。
13. D. expect 期望 ;allow 允许 ,准许 ;wish 希望 ;promise 答应 ,许诺 ,有.....可能。根据句意 "如果她在艺术学校好好培训 ,这个女孩就有可能成为一名好的舞蹈演员" 可知 ,D 项正确。
14. D. 根据语境 ,此处应用系动词 stay ,stay 作系动词表示 "保持 ,仍然是" ,stay young 意为 "仍然很年轻"。
15. D. 只要我们看出 "as... as..." 前后句式平衡 ,也就是 "The students spent as much time getting trained as they spent (in) studying" ,就不难选出 D 项 ,此时 did 指代 spent。

专题三 动词的时态和语态



考点聚焦

动词时态的考查是高考的热点 ,近几年高考主要考查以下十种时态的形式和用法 :

1. 一般现在时 2. 一般过去时 3. 一般将来时 4. 现在进行时 5. 过去进行时 ;



6. 现在完成时 7. 过去完成时 8. 过去将来时 9. 现在完成进行时 ;10. 将来完成时。
动词语态主要考查主动与被动的区别、主动表被动以及它们在各种时态中的运用。



重点突破



重点 1 时态问题

1. 一般现在时与现在进行时

(1) 表示将来的一般现在时与现在进行时在用法上的区别:

① 一般现在时表示将来时间时,用于时间表、节日单或日程表上所安排好的事情。常见的动词多为 go, come, sail, start, leave 等。

② 现在进行时表示将来时间时,则强调个人在最近要做的事先安排、计划好的事情,常跟表示将来的时间状语连用。

注意:一般现在时与现在进行时均可表示最近按计划或安排要做的事情,但前者表示某个集体或组织的计划,而后者表示个人的计划。如:

I **leave** for Changchun tomorrow. (我和其他成员一起去,且该计划也不是我个人定的)

I **am leaving** tomorrow. (我个人的计划)

『典例 1』 Professor Smith, along with his assistants, _____ on the project day and night to meet the deadline.

A. work B. working C. is working D. are working

『解析』 C。现在进行时可以表示目前这一阶段正在进行的动作。句意:史密斯教授和他的助手们为了如期完成这一项目,一直在夜以继日地工作着。由此可排除 A、B 两项。此外,“A with/along with/together with/but B”作主语时,谓语动词的数与 A 保持一致,故 C 项正确。

(2) 与高频副词连用的一般现在时和现在进行时在用法上的区别:

① 一般现在时与高频副词(always, constantly, forever, perpetually, repeatedly 等)连用时表示经常性发生的动作,如:

Tom **always helps** me with my work. 汤姆总是帮我工作。

② 现在进行时与高频副词连用也表示经常性发生的动作,但它同时还强调说话者对某人所做事物的赞扬或批评(如欣赏、厌倦等),如:

She **is always coming** late for work. 她上班老是迟到(不耐烦)。

(3) 一般现在时和现在进行时与感觉动词连用时的意义上的区别:

① 感觉动词与一般现在时连用时,表示无意的感觉行为(如无意中听见或看见),如:

I **notice** a change in the way he is dressed. 我注意到他穿着的变化。

② 感觉动词与现在进行时连用时,表示有意的感觉行为,如:



I'm feeling this material to see whether it is pure silk or not. 我在摸这块料子,看它是否是纯丝绸的。

(4) 时间上的区别:一般现在时表示经常性发生的动作或客观的事实,现在进行时表示现在或现阶段一直在进行的动作。

『典例2』 The house belongs to my aunt but she _____ here any more. (06年全国卷I)

- A. hasn't lived B. didn't live C. hadn't lived D. doesn't live

『解析』 D。根据题意“这座房子是属于我姑姑的,但她已经不住在这里了”,说的是现在的情况,所以用一般现在时。

2. 一般过去时、现在完成时和过去完成时的区别

(1) 动作发生的时间不同

① 过去完成时表示“过去的过去”,使用过去完成时必须以过去的另一时间作参考,常与 *by* 或时间状语从句连用,或用于间接引语中。这种对“过去的过去”的判断,更多情况要依据上下文。

② 一般过去时表示“过去”,只说明过去的情况,与现在没有任何联系,常与 *yesterday*, *last month*, *two years ago*, *in 2000* 等确切的过去时间状语连用。

③ 现在完成时的动作虽然发生在过去,但它强调现在的情况,因此不能与确切的过去时间状语连用,但可以与 *already*, *never*, *before*, *yet*, *now*, *recently*, *so far*, *these days*, *today*, *in the past few years* 等连用。

『典例3』 Although medical science _____ control over several dangerous diseases, what worries us is that some of them are returning. (06年江苏卷)

- A. achieved B. has achieved C. will achieve D. had achieved

『解析』 B。从主句中用一般现在时可看出从句强调现在的结果,所以用现在完成时。句意是“尽管医学已经有了控制几种危险疾病的能力,但令我们担心的是有些疾病会反弹”。

『典例4』 John, a friend of mine, who got married only last week, spent \$ 3,000 more than he _____ for the wedding. (06年全国卷II)

- A. will plan B. has planned C. would plan D. had planned

『解析』 D。根据句意“我的朋友约翰上周结婚了,比原计划多花了3,000美元”,*plan* 发生在 *spent* 之前,是过去的过去,所以用过去完成时。

(2) 用于时间段的区别

① They *have stayed* in this hotel *for a week*. (现在完成时表示动作或状态持续到说话时,即说话时还没有离开这家旅馆)

② They *had stayed* in this hotel *for a week before they left*. (过去完成时表示动作或状态持续到过去某点或在整个阶段完成,即住旅馆只持续到他们离开时,而没有到说话时)

③ They stayed in this hotel *for a week last year*. (一般过去时表示过去的其中一段,即去年中的一周,与现在无关)



(3) 不同结构中的多个动作的陈述

① 发生在过去的一连串动作,用 *and*, *but* 或 *so* 连接时,都要用一般过去时。如:
He **came** up and **took** his bag away. 他走过来将他的包取走了。

② 在含有 *when*, *until* 等连词的主从复合句中,如果主句的动作和从句的动作发生在过去的不同时间,先发生的动作通常用过去完成时表示,而后面动作一般过去时。但若句中有 *before*, *after* 等连词,由于它们已经表明动作发生的先后顺序,两个动作都用一般过去时表示。试比较:

When I **had written** all my letters, I did some gardening. 我把所有的信写完了,在花园里干了点活。

I (**had**) **heard** the news before he told me. (用过去完成时更强调动作的先后顺序)

③ 在 *hardly/scarcely... when* 和 *no sooner... than* 这类表示“刚……就……”句型中,主句的谓语动词要用过去完成时,从句用过去时,而 *as soon as* 的主句和从句都可以用一般过去时。如:

Hardly **had** he **got** home when it **began** to rain. 他刚到家就开始下雨了。

As soon as he **got** home he **began** to cook. 他一到家就开始做饭。

④ *mean*, *intend* 等后接不定式时,用一般过去时表示过去没有实现的计划或打算,而 *hope*, *think*, *expect*, *plan*, *want* 等后接不定式时,用过去完成时表示过去没有实现的计划、打算、希望等。如:

I **meant** to thank her, but when I was leaving I couldn't find her anywhere. (本想谢谢她,但没找到人)

They **had hoped** to help but could not get there in time. (本想去,但时间来不及)

『典例 5』 All morning as she waited for the medical report from the doctor, her nervousness _____.

A. has grown B. is growing C. grew D. had grown

『解析』 C。在该题中有 *as* 引导的时间状语从句,说明过去的情况,所以用一般过去时。故正确答案是 C。

3. 一般过去时和过去进行时的区别

《试题调研》(第二辑)

(1) 一般过去时表示动作已完成,过去进行时则表示过去某个时刻动作正在进行,尚未完成。

(2) 一般过去时往往只说明过去发生了某事,侧重事实;而过去进行时则强调动作的持续性,侧重动作的过程。

(3) 在含有 *when*, *while* 的主从句中,过去进行时常与一般过去时搭配使用,前者为后者提供背景,表示较长的一个动作正在进行过程中(用过去进行时表示)而后者表示另一新动作或事件在此期间发生(用一般过去时)。

『典例 6』 I _____ in London for many years, but I've never regretted my final decision to move back to China. (06 年重庆卷)

A. lived B. was living C. have lived D. had lived

『解析』 A。从 *but* 后的分句内容可以看出说话者已经返回了中国,在伦敦住了

他会代替杰克行使职责。



很多年是发生在过去的一段时间里,所以要用一般过去时。

『典例 7』 —Where did you put the car keys?(06 年北京卷)

—Oh, I _____ I put them on the chair because the phone rang as I _____ in.

- A. remembered ; come
B. remembered ; was coming
C. remember ; come
D. remember ; was coming

『解析』 D。上句问“你将车钥匙放在哪了?”,下句回答“哦,我记得我将车钥匙放在椅子上,因为我当时进来时电话响了”,“我记得”指说话的时候,所以第一空要用一般现在时;“电话响”时(发生在过去),come 这个动作正在发生,所以第二空需用过去进行时。

4. 一般将来时、将来进行时与将来完成时的区别

(1) 一般将来时表示将要发生的动作或状态,通常用 shall/will/be going to 加动词原形构成。

(2) 将来进行时表示将来某一时刻或某一段时间内正在进行的动作,与特定的将来时间状语连用。

(3) 将来完成时用来表示在将来某一时间以前已经完成或一直持续的动作,它具有将来时和现在完成时两者的特点;多和表示将来某一固定时间的短语或时间状语从句连用。如 by then, by this time, by the year 2006, next month 等。

注意:★凡是将来动作,没有说明完成的时间则用一般将来时;若已说明完成的时间,经常使用将来完成时。试比较:

I **shall read** through this novel. 我将要读完这部小说(未说明时间)。

I **shall have read** through this novel this time tomorrow. 我明天这个时间可以读完这部小说(说明时间)。

★有些动词本身含有“完成”之意,如 finish, get through, complete, go over 等,可以用一般将来时代替将来完成时。如:

We **'ll finish** the work next week. 我们将于下周完成这项工作。

『典例 8』 The mayor of Beijing says that all construction work of the Beijing Olympics _____ by 2006.

- A. has been completed
B. has completed
C. will have been completed
D. will have completed

『解析』 C。该题中,从时间状语 by 2006 可以看出,动作到将来的某个时间完成,所以应该用将来完成时。

『典例 9』 At this time tomorrow _____ over the Atlantic.

- A. we 're going to fly
B. we 'll be flying
C. we 'll fly
D. we 're to fly

『解析』 B。在该题中,由题干中 tomorrow 可以判断是将来时,再根据 at this time 可以断定是进行时。

5. 过去完成进行时

过去完成进行时表示动作从过去某一时间之前开始,到过去某一时间仍然进行



或刚刚结束,前提是有一定的过去时间状语,同时也强调了动作的持续性。

〔典例 10〕 The crazy fans _____ patiently for two hours, and they would wait till the movie star arrived.

A. were waiting

B. had been waiting

C. had waited

D. would wait

〔解析〕 B。在该题中,根据后半句的谓语动词 would wait 和前一分句中的时间状语 for two hours 可以初步判定是过去完成时;再根据 movie star 还没有来,因此可以断定 wait 的动作在 movie star 到来之前还在继续进行着,因此用过去完成进行时。



重点 2 动词的被动语态

英语中动词有主动和被动两种语态。在主动句中,主语是动作的执行者;在被动句中,主语是动作的承受者。在被动语态中动作的执行者往往不明显、不重要或需要突出强调动作的承受者。一般只有及物动词才有被动语态。

另外还要注意下列情况:

1. 汉语中多运用措辞婉转语(如据说、有人说、大家认为等),英语中则用 it 作形式主语,后接被动结构。如:It is hoped that... (希望……); It is believed that... (据信……); It's supposed that... (据推测……); It's well-known that... (大家知道……); It must be pointed out that... (必须指出……)

2. give, send, show, lend, pay, tell, hand, bring, buy, get, make, leave, pass 等后接双宾语时,变其中一个宾语为主语(多把表示人的间接宾语改为主语)。如:

My sister bought me a new dictionary. →

I **was bought** a new dictionary (by my sister).

A new dictionary **was bought** for me (by my sister).

3. 动词短语改为被动语态时,短语中的副词或介词不可丢。如:

The speaker **was listened to** carefully. 人们仔细倾听发言人的讲话。

4. 在主动语态中,如果感官动词后含有省略 to 的不定式作宾语补足语,在改为被动语态时,不定式的 to 不能省略。如:

She is often **heard to sing** in her room. 经常听到她在房间里唱歌。

5. "get + v-ed" 也可表示被动语态,可以用于表示突然发生的、偶然出现的或最终出现的事。如:

More and more people are **getting attacked** in the underground these days. 近来越来越多的人在地铁里遭到袭击。

〔典例 1〕 —Your job _____ open for your return. (06 年北京卷)

—Thanks.

A. will be kept

B. will keep

C. had kept

D. had been kept

〔解析〕 A。分析句意“将你的工作保留着,等你回来”,该句中的主语与谓语动词之间是被动关系,所以要用被动语态;从语境可知谈论的是将来的动作,所以用一般将来时的被动语态。

『典例 2』 Be careful when you cross this very busy street. If not, you may _____ run over by a car.

- A. have B. get C. become D. turn

『解析』 B。get 后常接动词过去分词作表语,含有被动意义。句意是:过这条繁忙的马路时要多加小心,否则就有可能被车撞倒。



重点 3 时态和语态的综合考查

在高考题中,命题者常把动词的时态和语态放在一起进行综合考查,而不是孤立地考查某种时态或语态。这就要求我们把握句子主语与谓语之间的关系,分清动词是否及物,句子的主语是否是谓语动词的执行者等,然后再根据语境判断谓语的时态。

现将各种时态的被动语态形式列表如下:

时态	被动语态	例句
一般现在时	am/is/are + done	Paper is made from wood.
一般过去时	was/were + done	The old building was pulled down.
一般将来时	will/shall + be done	Another building will be built soon.
过去将来时	should/would be done	She said some more guests would be invited.
现在进行时	am/is/are being done	The new desks are being paint.
过去进行时	was/were + being done	The trees were being planted when I arrived.
现在完成时	have/has + been done	The house has been completed.
过去完成时	had + been done	The work had been finished when I got there.
含有情态动词	情态动词 + be done	It can be done like that.

『典例 1』 —I don't suppose the police know who did it. (06 年江苏卷)

—Well, surprisingly they do. A man has been arrested and _____ now.

- A. has been questioned B. is being questioned
C. is questioning D. has questioned

『解析』 B。根据句意“警方逮捕了一个人并在对其进行审问”可知,选项动词 question 与句子主语是被动关系,所以要用被动语态,根据 has been arrested 以及时间状语 now 的提示,可以断定动作正在进行,所以用现在进行时的被动语态。

『典例 2』 Millions of pounds' worth of damage _____ by a storm which swept across the north of England last night.

- A. has been caused B. had been caused
C. will be caused D. will have been caused.

『解析』 A。用现在完成时强调在过去发生的动作对现在造成的影响。句意为:昨晚横扫英格兰北部的暴风雨造成了上百万英镑的损失。句子主语 damage 和谓语动词 cause 是被动关系,所以用被动语态。



**重点4 主句与从句谓语动词的时态的一致性**

主句与从句的谓语动词在时态上往往要保持一致。当主句为过去的时态时,宾语从句的时态一般受其影响,要用过去的相应时态,并且此影响延伸至宾语从句中的定语从句、状语从句等。但下列三种情况除外:

1. 当宾语从句为客观真理或普遍事实时,要用一般现在时。如:

The boy said one and one is two. 孩子说一加一等于二。

2. 在主语从句、表语从句和同位语从句中,也要注意从句谓语动词与主句谓语动词的时态的一致性,其关键是注意动作发生的先后顺序。如:

Who **will be sent** abroad **has not been decided**. 派谁去国外,还没有决定(主句是现在完成时,从句是一般将来时)。

3. 当主句谓语动词是 suggest(建议), insist(坚持), demand(要求)等时,其宾语从句常用 should 加动词原形。(详见虚拟语气部分)

『典例』 Months ago we sailed ten thousand miles across this open sea, which _____ the Pacific, and we met no storms.

A. was called B. is called C. had been called D. has been called

『解析』 B。call 与主语之间是被动关系,被称为太平洋的海域是一个客观事实,所以用一般现在时。

**重点5 不能使用被动语态的动词**

1. 有些动词用主动形式表被动意义。这些动词主要是表示状态特征的系动词(look, sound, feel, smell, taste, prove, appear 等),表示开始、结束、运动的动词(begin, finish, start, open, close, stop, end, shut, run, move 等)和表示主语某种属性特征的动词(read, write, act, sell, wash, clean, wear, drink, play, cut 等)这些动词一般不单独使用,常有一个修饰语。

『典例1』 —What about the books?

—Books of this kind _____ well.

A. is selling B. sell C. sells D. sold

『解析』 B。动词 sell 的主动形式表被动含义,“sell well”卖得很好。

2. 另外还有少数动词多用进行时,其主动形式表被动含义,如 print, build, cook, fry, make 等。如:

The books are **printing**. 这些书正在排印中。

The meat is **cooking**. 肉正在煮。

**难点解疑****难点1 在时间和条件等状语从句中时态的使用**

在时间或条件状语从句中,若主句是一般现在时或一般将来时,那么从句用一般



C. doesn't work

D. isn't working

『解析』 C。从第二句的现在完成时可以看出强调现在的状态,所以第一句用一般现在时说明机器现在的状况。

『典例2』 We _____ our new neighbors yet, so we don't know their names. (06年上海春季卷)

A. don't meet

B. won't meet

C. haven't met

D. hadn't met

『解析』 C。从后面的一般现在时“我们不知道他们的名字”,说明我们到目前为止还没有见到新邻居,强调现在的结果,所以用现在完成时。

2. 时态的使用与一些标志性的词语相关

『典例3』 What we used to think _____ impossible now does seem possible. (06年天津卷)

A. is

B. was

C. has been

D. will be

『解析』 B。主语从句中的谓语动词是 used to do,表示“过去曾经做某事,现在已经不再那样”,说明是过去的情况,所以用一般过去时。

『典例4』 —_____ leave at the end of this month. (06年北京卷)

—I don't think you should do that until _____ another job.

A. I'm going to ; you'd found

B. I'm going to ; you've found

C. I'll ; you'll find

D. I'll ; you'd find

『解析』 B。at the end of this month 是表示将来的时间状语,是将来时态的时间标志,因此第一空要用一般将来时,在第二句中,时间状语从句中用现在的时态表示将来,所以应用现在完成时。



强化闯关

1. —How much can you pay me for the job?

—You _____ \$ 200.

A. will pay

B. are paying

C. will be paid

D. are paid

2. Since you weren't at the meeting, we _____ the decision without you.

A. made

B. had made

C. were making

D. would make

3. —Could you meet me at the airport?

—I'd like to, but I _____ Shanghai when you return.

A. will have left

B. was leaving

C. will leave

D. have left

4. —Why didn't you go to yesterday's meeting?

—I would have, but I _____ too busy working on the important experiment.

A. had been

B. was

C. were

D. am

5. Proper first aid can save a seriously injured person, especially when he or she is bleeding heavily or _____.

A. has poisoned

B. was poisoned



3. A. 由语境可知,“我”很想到机场去接“你”,不过当“你”来时,“我”将已经离开了上海,所以无法去接“你”。这里用将来完成时表示将来某一时刻已经做完某事或某一动作已经发生。
4. B. 答语的前部分是虚拟语气,后半句是真实语气,指过去的那个时候我很忙。
5. C. 本题综合考查句意和语态。此题可补全为:... especially when he or she is bleeding heavily or when he or she has been poisoned. poison 为及物动词,要用被动语态。
6. C. 本题主要考查动词的时态及语态的应用。第一空强调目前正在进行的一种行为,由于主语是动作的承受者,应用现在进行时的被动语态;第二空强调一般经常性的行为,应用一般现在时。
7. A. 根据“... is on the back...”可知,丢手机是我原来认为的,不是现在,“丢失”是在“我”以为“前”,是过去的过去,所以选 A。
8. B. 根据语境,强调“昨天我一整天都在帮弟弟”,故用过去进行时。
9. C. 根据上下文语境,指的是过去。
10. A. 由后半句“我们仅聊几句”可知,她当时还没走,was leaving 意为“正要走”,表示过去即将发生的动作。
11. D. 根据上下文的意思“当那帮人闯入的时候你在干什么”,“我已经关了电视,准备去睡觉了”,再结合语境,可知 D 项正确。
12. C. fall 是短暂性动词,“fall asleep”这个动作是发生在看电视的过程中,不能用进行时态。
13. C. 主句用将来时,时间状语从句用一般现在时表示将来。
14. C. 根据句意可知,taste 在此作系动词,用一般现在时的主动形式表示被动意义。
15. A. “be to do”与“when”连用时,表示“正要做什么……这时突然……”。

专题四 非谓语动词



考点聚焦

非谓语动词包括动词不定式、动词-ing (现在分词或动名词)和过去分词三种形式,它在英语中占有很重要的位置,是英语学习中的难点,更是高考中的重点。主要考查 1. 动词不定式和动词-ing 的时态和语态 2. 不定式作主语、宾语、宾语补足语、表语、定语和状语 3. 动词-ing 作主语、表语、宾语、宾语补足语、定语和状语 4. 过去分词作定语、表语、宾语补足语和状语 5. 非谓语动词之间用法的区别。

非谓语动词



重点突破



重点 1 动词不定式的考查

不定式不能作谓语动词,它可以有自己的宾语、状语,构成的不定式短语在句中

Sometimes we have to pull the all-nighter.

口语
点滴



可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语、补足语和状语。高考对不定式的考查涉及到不定式的时态、语态、功能和省略等。

1. 作宾语

用动词不定式作宾语的动词有 :want , refuse , pretend , promise , fail , agree , aim , choose , decide , demand , expect , hope , learn , manage , try , afford , offer , wish , intend , plan , ask , desire 等。另外动词不定式在作 tell , show , understand , explain , teach , learn , advise , discuss 等动词的宾语时 ,前面常带疑问词 ,即 :疑问词(how , when , where , what , who. . .)+ to do。如 :

He showed me **how to do** the work. 他教我怎样做这项工作。

『典例 1』 I 've worked with children before , so I know what _____ in my new job.

A. expected B. to expect C. to be expecting D. expects

『解析』 B。"疑问词 + 不定式"作 know 的宾语 ,what to expect = what I will expect。

2. 作宾语补足语

可以带有动词不定式作宾语补足语的常见动词有 :wish , cause , ask , beg , expect , force , invite , permit , persuade , want , warn , allow , advise , encourage , request 等。

动词不定式作动词 feel , hear , see , watch , notice , observe 等感官动词以及 have , let , make 等使役动词的宾语补足语时 ,不定式符号 to 要省略。但如果这些句子变成被动结构时就必须带 to 符号。如 :

I often **hear** him **sing** the song.

He is often **heard to sing** the song.

『典例 2』 My advisor encouraged _____ a summer course to improve my writing skills.

A. for me taking B. me taking C. for me to take D. me to take

『解析』 D。在该题中 ,encourage 后接不定式作宾语补足语。故正确答案是 D。

3. 不定式在下列短语后一起构成谓语:

在 be said , be reported , be known , be believed , be considered , be thought , be likely , be certain , be sure , be unlikely , be destined 等后。think , consider , believe 等后可跟 to have done 作补语 ,表示动作发生在谓语动作之前。

『典例 3』 AIDS is said _____ the biggest health challenge to both men and women in that area over the past few years. (06 年湖北卷)

A. that it is B. to be
C. that is has been D. to have been

『解析』 D。be said 后接不定式 ,根据题中的时间状语 over the past few years ,表明不定式的动作发生在谓语动作之前 ,所以必须用不定式的完成式。

『典例 4』 Police are now searching for a woman who is reported to _____ since the flood hit the area last Friday. (06 年山东卷)

A. have been missing B. have got lost

C. be missing

D. get lost

『解析』 A. be reported to do sth. 意为“被报道做某事”；后半句是由 since 引导的时间状语从句，表示从过去到现在的这段时间，应和现在完成时连用，而且必须和延续性动词连用，可排除 B、C、D 选项。正确答案为 A。

4. 不定式作表语

不定式放在 be 和其他系动词后，用来说明主语的内容。同样，特殊疑问词和不定式连用也可以作表语。

注意：如果主句部分的谓语动词或非谓语动词中含有 do，那么作表语的不定式可以省去 to。如：The only thing he could **do was (to) tell** the truth. 他只有说真话。

『典例 5』 The purpose of new technologies is to make life easier, _____ it more difficult.

A. not make

B. not to make

C. not making

D. do not make

『解析』 B. 在该题中，有两个不定式作并列表语，由于前后是对比关系，所以不定式符号 to 不能省略。故答案是 B。

5. 不定式的语态

(1) 不定式的被动式 不定式的逻辑主语是动作的承受者，具有被动意义。

『典例 6』 It took a long time for the connection between body temperature and illness _____. (06 年江西卷)

A. to make

B. to be made

C. making

D. being made

『解析』 B. 该题是 "It takes some time to do sth." 句型，不定式与其逻辑主语 the connection 之间是被动关系，所以用不定式的被动式。

『典例 7』 The Chinese are proud of the 29th Olympic Games _____ in Beijing in 2008. (06 年四川卷)

A. hold

B. holding

C. held

D. to be held

『解析』 D. 分析句子的结构可知，选项应作定语修饰名词。第 29 届奥运会 08 年将在北京举行，是将来的动作，不定式作定语表示即将发生的动作；不定式与 the 29th Olympic Games 之间是被动关系，用被动式。所以答案为 D。

(2) 在下列结构中，虽含有被动意味，却常用不定式的主动式：

★ There be 句型中作定语的不定式。试比较：

There is nothing **to see**. 没有什么可看的了。(即：没有什么值得看的)

There is nothing **to be seen**. 看不见有什么。(即：什么也没看见)

★ 疑问词后接不定式。如：

I don't know which bus **to take**. 我不知道该乘哪路车。

『典例 8』 Mr. Green stood up in defence of the 16-year-old boy, saying that he was not the one _____. (06 年安徽卷)

A. blamed

B. blaming

C. to blame

D. to be blamed

『解析』 C. 不定式 to blame 意为“该受责备”，主动形式表被动意义，在该题中作定语修饰 the one，意为“格林先生站起来为那个 16 岁的男孩辩护，说他不是该受责

There is no use doing what you like ; you should like what you do.



(2) 动名词的语态主要看与逻辑主语之间的关系, 如果逻辑主语是动名词的执行者就用主动式, 是动名词的承受者就用被动式。如:

No one likes *being laughed at* in public. 没有人愿意被当众嘲笑。

注意: need, want, require 作“需要”讲时, 后接动词-ing 形式或接不定式的被动式表被动。

『典例 1』 The storm left, _____ a lot of damage to this area.

A. caused B. to have caused C. to cause D. having caused

『解析』 D。选项动词与前面有逗号隔开, 说明不是并列谓语, 排除 A。cause 与主语 storm 之间是主动关系, 所以用动词-ing 形式作状语表结果, 用完成式表示动作发生在谓语动作之前, 相当于“The storm left and had caused a lot of damage to this area”。而不定式作结果状语表示出乎意料。所以答案为 D。

2. 动名词作主语

动词不定式和动名词在句中可以作主语。但在下列句型中常用动名词作主语:

(1) It is/was no use/good + doing sth.

(2) It is/was of little use/good + doing sth.

(3) It is/was useless + doing sth.

『典例 2』 It is no _____ arguing with Bill because he will never change his mind.

A. use B. help C. time D. way

『解析』 A。该题是“It is/was no use/good + doing sth.”句型。

『典例 3』 _____ to sunlight for too much time will do harm to one's skin.

A. Exposed B. Having exposed
C. Being exposed D. After being exposed

『解析』 C。在该题中, 谓语 will do 缺少主语, 而“皮肤”与“暴露”之间是被动关系, 故用动词-ing 的被动式。因此答案是 C。

3. 动名词作介词或动词的宾语

(1) 以下动词后面只接动名词作宾语:

admit, appreciate, avoid, consider(考虑), delay, dislike, enjoy, escape, excuse, finish, imagine, keep, mind, miss(错过), practise, risk, resist, suggest 等。

(2) 以下动词词组后面只接动名词作宾语:

be/get used to(习惯于), belong to(属于), can't help(情不自禁), can't stand(无法忍受), equal to(等同于), give up, go on, feel like, keep on, insist on, look forward to, put off, devote... to/be devoted to(致力于), refer to, pay attention to, point to, get down to 等。

(3) 下列动词接不定式和动名词时意义不同:

① remember to do sth. 记住要做某事 remember doing sth. 记得已做过某事

② forget to do sth. 忘记要做某事 forget doing sth. 忘记已做过某事

③ stop to do sth. 停下来开始做某事(实际上不定式在此作目的状语); stop doing sth. 停止正在做的事



- ④ go on to do sth. 接着做另一件事 ;go on doing sth. 继续做同一件事
 ⑤ try to do sth. 设法做某事 ;try doing sth. 试着做某事
 ⑥ mean to do sth. 打算(意欲,企图)做某事 ;mean doing sth. 意味着某事
 ⑦ regret to do sth. 遗憾(后悔)要做某事 ;regret doing sth. 后悔已做某事
 ⑧ can't help to do sth. 不能帮助做某事 ;can't help doing sth. 情不自禁地做某事

『典例 4』 —There is a story here in the paper about a 110-year-old man.

—My goodness ! I can't imagine _____ that old.

- A. to be B. to have been C. being D. having been

『解析』 C. imagine 后接动名词作宾语,排除 A、B 选项, D 项完成式表示动作先于谓语动词发生,不合题意,故排除。

『典例 5』 Isn't it time you got down to _____ the papers ?(06 年重庆卷)

- A. mark B. be marked C. being marked D. marking

『解析』 D. get down to 后接名词或动名词作宾语, mark 与主语之间是主动关系,所以用主动式。

『典例 6』 After he became conscious, he remembered _____ and _____ on the head with a rod. (06 年江西卷)

- A. to attack ; hit B. to be attacked ; to be hit
 C. attacking ; be hit D. having been attacked ; hit

『解析』 D. 根据句意“他苏醒后,记得被人袭击和用棒打在头上”可知事情已经发生过了;又因为选项动词与主语之间是被动关系,所以选 D。



重点 3 现在分词与过去分词的考查

分词分现在分词和过去分词,具有动词、形容词和副词的特征,在句中作定语、补足语、表语或状语。其否定形式是直接在前面加 not。分词的基本情况如下表所示:

类别	主动语态	被动语态	时间意义	语态意义
现在分词	一般式 doing	being done	与谓语动词同时或几乎同时发生	根据语态形式,主动或被动意义
	完成式 having done	having been done	发生在谓语动词之前	根据语态形式,主动或被动意义
过去分词	done	无	表示动作完成	被动意义

1. 分词作表语

现在分词作表语表示主语的特征,过去分词作表语是对主语进行描述,常与系动词 be, get, remain, stay 等连用。现在分词作表语含有主动意味,其主语常是事或物;过去分词作表语表示被动意义,其主语常是人,有些过去分词作表语实际上已经构成短语,如: be interested in, be satisfied with, be covered with, be dressed in, be seated 等。

『典例 1』 Tom sounds very much _____ in the job, but I'm not sure whether he

can manage it. (06 年安徽卷)

- A. interested B. interesting C. interestingly D. interestedly

『解析』 A。在题中 sound 是一个系动词, 意思是“听起来令人觉得, 似乎”, 其后应接一个可以作表语的词, 因此排除 B、D 两项。根据句意, 表语在此是对主语 Tom 进行描述, 而不是表示其特征, 因此应用过去分词 interested。

2. 分词作定语

(1) 现在分词作定语时和被修饰词之间为主动关系, 表示动作正在或经常发生。单个现在分词作定语放在被修饰词前面, 现在分词短语作定语则放在被修饰词的后面。

『典例 2』 There have been several new events _____ to the program for the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games. (06 年北京卷)

- A. add B. to add C. adding D. added

『解析』 C。该句是“there be”句型, 所填选项作定语修饰名词 events。因为选项动词 add 与 events 之间是主动关系, 所以用现在分词作定语。答案为 C。

(2) 过去分词作定语时和被修饰词之间往往是被动关系, 表示动作已经完成。单个的过去分词作定语放在被修饰词的前面, 过去分词短语作定语则放在被修饰词的后面。

『典例 3』 Five people won the “China’s Green Figure” award, a title _____ to ordinary people for their contributions to environmental protection. (06 年山东卷)

- A. being given B. is given C. given D. was given

『解析』 C。题中 a title 是 award 的同位语, 后接非谓语动词短语作定语, 因此可排除 B、D 两项。选项动词 give 与名词 title 之间是被动关系, 且根据句意 give 并非表示正在进行, 因此用过去分词作定语。答案为 C。

3. 分词作状语

(1) 现在分词作状语时, 可以表示时间、原因、结果、条件、让步、行为方式、伴随状况等, 表示时间关系的现在分词短语有时可由连词 while 或 when 引导。

『典例 4』 When _____ different cultures, we often pay attention only to the differences without noticing the many similarities. (06 年浙江卷)

- A. compared B. being compared
C. comparing D. having compared

『解析』 C。选项动词 compare 与句子主语之间是主动关系, 根据语意选项动词并非发生在谓语动词之前, 所以用现在分词的一般式的主动语态作状语, 表示时间。正确答案为 C。

(2) 过去分词在句中作状语时和句子的主语之间是被动关系, 即动宾关系。它在句中可表示时间、原因、条件、行为方式、让步及伴随状况等。

『典例 5』 _____ for the breakdown of the school computer network, Alice was in low spirits. (06 年福建卷)

- A. Blaming B. Blamed C. To blame D. To be blamed



—I didn't tell him the news. 我没有告诉他那个消息。

—Oh, you ought **to have**. 噢,你本应该告诉他的。

『典例』 I meant _____, but when I was leaving, I couldn't find her anywhere.

- A. to do B. to C. doing D. doing to

『解析』 B。根据语意,mean 后用不定式,表示“打算做某事”,此处 to 后省略了本打算进行的动作。



难点2 独立主格结构

独立主格结构与句子主语之间没有句法上的联系,但与句子的意义是紧密相连的。非谓语动词在下列情况下构成独立主格结构:

1. 名词/代词 + 不定式/现在分词/过去分词

Nobody to come here the day after tomorrow, they will have to put off the meeting till next week. 如果后天没有人来,他们就把会议推迟到下周。

2. "with + 宾语 + 非谓语动词"结构在句中可以作伴随、原因、时间状语等

『典例1』 _____ two exams to worry about, I have to work really hard this week-end.

- A. With B. Besides C. As for D. Because of

『解析』 A。“with + 宾语 + 不定式”结构中,不定式和宾语之间是被动关系,表示尚未发生的动作。该结构在此作原因状语。

『典例2』 The child slept with the light _____.

- A. to burn B. burnt C. burning D. burn

『解析』 C。本题考查“with + 宾语 + 现在分词”结构,宾语和现在分词之间是主动关系,表示动作和谓语动词同时发生。



强化闯关

1. —What happened to you on your way back to the hotel last night?

—I lost my way in complete darkness and, _____ things worse, it began to pour.

- A. making B. to make C. having made D. made

2. It rained nonstop for ten days, completely _____ our holiday.

- A. to ruin B. ruined C. having ruined D. ruining

3. —Why do you look sad?

—There are so many problems _____.

- A. remaining to settle B. remained settling
C. remaining to be settled D. remained to be settled


4. —We didn't find the Blacks _____ the lecture.

—No one had told him about _____ a lecture the following day.

- A. to attend; there to be B. attending; there being
C. attended; there be D. attend; there was



- A. I am
B. I 'm
C. I 'm just going to
D. I 'm just going


答案与解析

1. B. to make things worse 意为"使情况更糟糕的是",用不定式表示动作随后发生,也可以理解为固定结构作插入语。
2. D. 选项动词与主语之间是主动关系,与谓语动词同时发生,所以用动词-ing 形式的一般式表示伴随结果,即结果与原因之间有必然的联系,所以 D 项正确。
3. C. remain 在 there be 结构中用作后置定语,由于 remain 是不及物动词,故应用现在分词,相当于定语从句 that remains,可排除 B、D 两项,动词 settle 置于 remain 之后,应用动词不定式的被动结构来表示 settle 与主语之间是被动关系且动作还未完成。故答案为 C。
4. B. 第一空的选项动词 attend 与逻辑主语之间是主动关系,故排除 C 项;find 后跟不定式时一般省略不定式符号 to,可排除 A 项;第二空介词 about 后应使用动名词形式。故正确答案为 B。
5. B. 根据句意可知,选项动词的逻辑主语 the medicine 与动词 take 之间为被动关系,实际上相当于一个时间状语从句 only when it is taken... 故应选过去分词 taken 在句中作状语。
6. D. 选项动词短语与其逻辑主语之间是被动关系,由此可以排除 A、C 两项;B 项为过去分词,表示动作已经完成,也不合题意。故正确答案为 D。
7. B. 根据句意可知,选项动词为原因状语,表主动,强调动作的完成性,相当于一个原因状语从句 As I haven 't prepared tomorrow 's lessons... 故应选 B 选项 A 为现在分词,不表示完成的意思,选项 C 为不定式的否定结构,表目的,选项 D 为现在分词的被动结构,not 应置于分词 being 前面。
8. B. be supposed to do sth. 表示"应该做某事";若用不定式的完成式,则表示"过去本来应该做某事,而实际上没有去做",含有"批评,责备,抱怨"之意。
9. D. 第一空是 where 引导的非限制性定语从句,此题的主句结构是" Nowadays teens prefer going to the cybercafe... to doing some reading"。弄清此句子结构"prefer doing A to doing B"就简单了。
10. A. 根据句意,句子的前半部分在整个句子中作原因状语,由于没有表原因的从属连词,因此要使用独立主格结构 couldn 't help but 后接省略 to 的动词不定式。正确答案为 A。
11. C. 第一空所在句为"there be"句型,可用 to build 或 to be built;第二空选项动词 complete 与其逻辑主语之间是被动关系,且表示动作尚未完成,故应用过去分词的现在式。正确答案为 C。
12. A. 此处用 with 结构作伴随状语。
13. D. 根据句意"我不打算吃任何东西,但这些蛋糕看上去太好吃了,所以我忍不住想尝一个",第一空应用不定式表示"打算,意欲做某事",可以排除 A、C 两项;



resist后只能接 *v-ing* 形式作宾语,表示“忍住做某事”。故正确答案为 D。

14. B. 动词不定式作状语的逻辑主语必须是人,参看四个选项的主语,只有 one 可以指代人。
15. C. 为了避免重复,在 *be about to*, *be going to*, *be able to*, *be sure to*, *be likely to*, *be ready to*, *be supposed to* 等短语中常常承前省略到后的内容,但 *to* 不能省略。正确答案为 C。

专题五 形容词和副词



考点聚焦

近年高考对形容词和副词的考查多集中在以下几个方面:比较等级的使用;在具体语境中辨析形容词和副词的词义;多个形容词作定语的词序;常见形容词和副词的习惯用法等。对于比较级的考查,注重深层语意,即“比较”的意思并不能直接从结构中看出,而是从语句的深层意义中挖掘出来。



重点突破



重点 1 形容词修饰名词的位置

两个以上的形容词修饰一个名词时,与被修饰的名词关系较密切的形容词靠近名词,如果几个形容词与名词的密切程度差不多,则音节少的形容词在前,音节多的在后。它们的顺序是:限定词(冠词、物主代词、指示代词、不定代词)+数词(序数词、基数词)+描绘性形容词(*nice*, *good*, *interesting*, *beautiful* 等)+特征形容词(大小、长短、高低、形状、年龄、新旧)+颜色形容词+国籍、来源+物质材料+用途、类别+中心名词。我们可以用下面的一个顺口溜帮助记忆:

限定描绘大长高,形状年龄和新老。

颜色国籍出材料,作用类别往后靠。

『典例 1』 _____ students are required to take part in the boat race.

- A. Ten strong young Chinese B. Ten Chinese strong young
C. Chinese ten young strong D. Young strong ten Chinese

『解析』 A. 我们可以按照多个形容词的排列顺序“数词+描绘性形容词+年龄+国籍”得出答案 A。

注意:形容词作定语时,我们尤其要记住下面两个特殊结构:

so/how/as/too+*adj.*+*a(n)*+单数名词

rather/quite/what/such+*a(n)*+*adj.*+单数名词

『典例 2』 We were in _____ when we left that we forgot the airline tickets.

- A. a rush so anxious B. a such anxious rush

C. so an anxious rush

D. such an anxious rush

『解析』 D。从"rather/quite/what/such + a(n) + *adj.* + 单数名词"这一结构可以得出正确答案是 D。



重点2 形容词和副词的比较级及最高级

1. 有些形容词和副词没有比较等级

(1) 表示比较、特殊意义的 :comparative(*ly*), relative(*ly*), particular(*ly*), special(*ly*)

(2) 表示绝对意义的 :absolute(*ly*), unexpected(*ly*), entire(*ly*), excellent(*ly*), perfect(*ly*), total(*ly*), whole(*wholly*), complete(*ly*)

(3) 表示大小、极限、主观、上下等意义的 :extreme(*ly*), main , major , minor , chief(*ly*), senior , junior

(4) 表示性质、特征的 :economic , scientific , wooden , earthen , golden , woolen

(5) 表示独一无二、形状、强调的 :only , single , round , square , very(正是) , own , favourite , simply , hardly , scarcely

2. 形容词或副词的 *as...as* 结构

(1) 两者相比,当 $A=B$ 时,用 "*as + adv./adj.* 原级 + *as*" 来表示。如:

Women can do *as well as* men. 妇女能干得和男人一样好。

(2) 两者相比,当 $A \neq B$ 时,用 "*not as/so + adj./adv.* 原级 + *as*" 表示。如:

He is *not as/so suitable for the job as* I am. 他不如我适合这项工作。

『典例1』 What a table ! I've never seen such a thing before. It is _____ it is long.

A. half not as wide as

B. wide not as half as

C. not half as wide as

D. as wide as not half

『解析』 C。谓语动词是系动词 *be*, 其否定形式是在 *be* 后加 *not*; 可在 *as...as* 句型前加副词修饰, 表示程度。

『典例2』 John is the tallest boy in the class , _____ according to himself.

A. five foot eight as tall as

B. as tall as five foot eight

C. as five foot eight tall as

D. as tall five foot eight as

『解析』 B。表示达到多少, 常用 "*as...as + 数字*" 结构。如 *as long as five metres* 长达五米; *as heavy as two tons* 重达两吨。

3. 形容词或副词的比较级 + **than**

(1) 双方比较, 当 $A > B$ 时, 用 "*比较级 + than*" 结构; 当 $A < B$ 时, 用 "*less + adj./adv.* 原级 + *than*" 结构。

(2) 双方相比, 一方超过另一方, 并要强调超出的程度和数量时, 可在比较级前加表示程度的状语, 如 :*even , much , very much , still , any , a lot , a bit , a little , far , yet , by far , a great deal , twice , three times , rather , slightly* 等。

『典例3』 I don't think this film is by far the most boring. I have seen _____.

A. better

B. worse

C. the best

D. the worst



『解析』 B。第一句“我认为这部电影不是最乏味的”，说明说话者看过比这部电影更糟糕的，所以应该用比较级，句后省略了 than it。该题的比较关系是通过前后语境体现的。

『典例 4』 Of the two sisters, Betty is _____ one, and she is also the one who loves to be quiet. (06 年安徽卷)

- A. a younger B. a youngest C. the younger D. the youngest

『解析』 C。当形容词的比较级作定语修饰名词时要用冠词。本题中用定冠词表示特指两个中更小的那个。

4. "the + 比较级, the + 比较级" 结构表示“越……越……”

『典例 5』 In recent years travel companies have succeeded in selling us the idea that the further we go, _____.

- A. our holiday will be better B. our holiday will be the better
C. the better our holiday will be D. the better will our holiday be

『解析』 C。该题是“the + 比较级, the + 比较级”结构。句意为“近年来，旅游公司成功地向我们推销了这样一个观点：我们走得越远，我们的假期就过得越好”。

5. 当三者或三者以上相比，表示最高程度时，用最高级。这种情况下一般常有表示比较范围的介词短语，最高级可被序数词以及 much, by far, nearly, almost, by no means, not quite, not really 等词语修饰。

注意：最高级意义有时可以用比较级形式来表示：

★ 比较级 + than any other + 可数名词单数

★ 比较级 + than any of the other + 可数名词复数

★ no/never/nothing... + 比较级

★ “否定词 + 不定冠词 + 形容词的比较级 + 名词” 或 “否定词 + 副词的比较级”

『典例 6』 Greenland, _____ island in the world, covered over two million square kilometers.

- A. it is the largest B. that is the largest
C. is the largest D. the largest

《
试
题
调
研
》

『解析』 D。在该题中，选项 A 没有连词，不可连接句子；B 项中的 that 不可引导非限制性定语从句；D 项 the largest island in the world 在句中作同位语，是正确答案。

『典例 7』 Your story is perfect ; I've never heard _____ before. (06 年全国卷 II)

- A. the better one B. the best one C. a better one D. a good one

(
第
二
辑
)

『解析』 C。根据题意可知本题考查的是比较级，比较对象为“Your story”，故排除 B、D，the 表示“两个中更……”，不合题意，所以排除 A；不定冠词表示泛指，a better one“一个更好的”。

6. "too + adj./adv. + to do sth." 结构

通常表示“太……而不能做某事”；但对于 happy, glad, anxious, eager, willing, thankful, true, easy, likely, pleased 等词，其程度即使超过一定极限也不会出现与愿



望相违背的结果,所以这些词在这个结构中表示"只是/很……去做某事",too前可加only。

注意:当too修饰形容词或副词时,其前可用a bit, a little, rather, much, far, a lot修饰,表示不同程度,但不能用very, fairly, pretty, quite修饰。如:

Rose was **all too satisfied to** defeat the defending champion. 露丝胜了上届冠军,感到非常满意。



重点3 形容词、副词的辨析

1. 形容词主要用来修饰名词,也可修饰something, nothing等不定代词,在句中作定语、表语、宾语补足语或状语,作状语表示伴随、原因或是对主语进行解释等,可以看作是"being + 形容词",位于句首、句中或句尾,表示伴随时通常用逗号隔开。

『典例1』 Some experts think that language learning is much _____ for children as their tongues are more flexible. (06年上海春季卷)

- A. easy B. easier C. easily D. more easily

『解析』 B。所填选项在句中作表语,所以用形容词,C、D两项可以排除;又根据句尾的more flexible可知应用比较级与之呼应。

『典例2』 _____ and happy, Tony stood up and accepted the prize. (06年全国卷I)

- A. Surprising B. Surprised C. Being surprised D. To be surprising

『解析』 B。过去分词surprised实际上是形容词,通常形容人,该句中形容词短语surprised and happy作状语,说明主语的特征。

2. 副词主要用作状语,修饰动词、形容词、从句或整个句子。修饰整个句子时,可置于句首、句中或句尾,与句子的其他成分之间通常用逗号隔开。如:

『典例3』 The performer was waving his stick in the street and it _____ missed the child standing nearby. (06年上海春季卷)

- A. narrowly B. nearly C. hardly D. closely

『解析』 A。narrowly常用来表示"差一点没有",narrowly miss意为"差一点打中"。nearly几乎,密切地;hardly几乎不;closely接近地。A项修饰动词符合语境。

『典例4』 Although she did not know Boston well, she made her way _____ to the Home Circle Building. (06年湖南卷)

- A. easy enough B. enough easy C. easily enough D. enough easily

『解析』 C。所填选项应是副词来修饰动词made,故排除A、B两项;enough作副词修饰形容词或副词时,应后置。

3. 有些副词有两种形式,其中一种形式与形容词相同,另一种是在形容词后加-ly。这两种形式的副词在意义上有所不同,如:

close 接近(指距离),closely 仔细地,密切地;free 免费,freely 自由地,自如地;deep 深地,deeply 深刻地,深入地;hard 努力,hardly 几乎不。

『典例5』 It was raining heavily. Little Mary felt cold, so she stood _____ to her mother.



A. close

B. closely

C. closed

D. closing

『解析』 A。close 用作副词,意为"接近"指具体距离上的接近;closely 常表示抽象意义,意为"密切地,严密地"根据题意应选 A。



难点解疑



难点 1 倍数的表达法

1. 表示 A 是 B 的几倍时,用下面三个句型:

(1) A + 动词 + 倍数 + 比较级 + than B

(2) A + 动词 + 倍数 + as + 原级 + as B

(3) A + 动词 + 倍数 + the + 相应的名词 + of B

在使用这些句型时,要注意:

★形容词可用于这三个句型,副词则只能用于前两个句型。

★句型(3)中的名词指的是表示"长、宽、高、深"等形容词的相应的名词形式。

如 long→length, wide→width, high→height, deep→depth 等。

★倍数的表示法为:"一倍"用 the same/as many/much as...,"两倍"用 twice,"三倍"以上用基数词 + times。

2. 如用名词表示"量"的倍数时,则用以下两个句型:

(1) 倍数 + more + 名词 + than

(2) 倍数 + as many/much + 名词 + 其他 + as

『典例 1』 At a rough estimate, Nigeria is _____ Great Britain.

A. three times the size as

B. the size three times of

C. three times as the size of

D. three times the size of

『解析』 D。表示倍数:倍数 + the size of...。

『典例 2』 It is reported that the United States uses _____ energy as the whole of Europe.

A. as twice

B. twice much

C. twice much as

D. twice as much

『解析』 D。表示倍数:倍数 + as + 形容词(副词)原级 + as。



难点 2 very 与 much 的用法区别

1. **much** 可用来修饰动作意义很强的动词,也可修饰形容词或副词的比较级。如:

He **much** regretted the mistake. 他对错误深表遗憾。

He 's **much** better today. 他今天身体好多了。

2. **very** 可修饰形容词或副词的原级,也可修饰作为形容词的过去分词及最高级,此外,和 **much** 连用可修饰动词。如:

That 's a **very** serious problem. 那是个非常严重的问题。

She is the **very** shortest in our class. 她是我们班最矮的。

Thank you **very** much. 非常感谢。



『典例』 —I was riding along the street and all of a sudden, a car cut in and knocked me down.

—You can never be _____ careful in the street.

- A. much B. very C. so D. too

『解析』 D。“can not/never too + 形容词/副词”意为“再……也不过分,越……越好”。如:You can't praise the theory too highly. 不管你怎么赞扬这个理论都不过分。



强化闯关

- The captain did land us _____, but the ship sank soon after it reached the port.
A. safe B. safely C. safety D. saved
- The shop manager always says to her assistants, "We can never be _____ polite to our customers."
A. so B. more C. too D. that
- We are leaving on June 15.
—So why not come to spend _____ days with us? I'm serious.
A. all these last few B. these all last few
C. these last all few D. all last these few
- Have you been to the cinema _____?
A. late B. later C. lately D. latest
- Can the students in our class compare with those in theirs?
—The students in our class study _____ but not _____.
A. harder; as clever B. hard; clever
C. hardest; cleverest D. harder; cleverest
- Do you like the place of interest?
—On the contrary, it's the _____ place that I want to visit.
A. worst B. last C. best D. latest
- The little girl couldn't work the problem out. She wasn't _____ clever.
A. that B. much C. enough D. too
- An actor can not well play the role without life experiences _____ more than a dancer can make a difference without much practice.
A. any B. no C. not D. much
- We don't care if a hunting dog smells _____, but we really don't want him to smell _____.
A. well; well B. bad; badly C. badly; bad D. well; bad
- Paper produced every year is _____ the world's production of vehicles.
A. the three times weight of B. three times the weight of
C. as three times heavy as D. three times as heavier as

形容词和副词

It may go around and bite him in the butt.

口语
点滴



11. —Are you satisfied with what she has done?
—Not at all. It couldn't be _____.
A. so bad B. any worse C. much better D. the best
12. —Let me help you, Tom.
—Thank you. I can do it. Here's _____ to hold all these things.
A. a big enough case B. an enough big case
C. a case enough big case D. a case big enough
13. The design is now _____ with the experts' suggestion. We couldn't find _____ better one.
A. perfect; the B. the most perfect; a
C. perfect; a D. more perfect; the
14. The cave is very _____ and many explorers are _____ interested in it.
A. deep; deep B. deeply; deeply C. deep; deeply D. deeply; deep
15. The man was lying on the ground _____ dead.
A. as possible as B. as well as C. as soon as D. as good as



答案与解析

1. A. 形容词作 land 的状语, 强调状态, 而不是强调方式。
2. C. "can not/never too + 形容词/副词" 意为"再……也不过分, 越……越好"。
3. A. 多个形容词作定语修饰名词时的顺序为: 限定词 + 指示代词 + 序数词 + 基数词。
4. C. 同根副词辨析。lately 为副词, 意为"最近, 近来"; late"迟, 晚"; last"最后"; latest"最新的" 均不符合题意。
5. A. 两者相比, 应用比较级形式。由第一空可先将 B、C 排除; 再看第二空, 可以将 D 项的备选单词 cleverest 排除, 故正确答案为 A。
6. B. 从题干的信息 on the contrary 可知言外之意是 "No, I don't like it at all", 因此此处应该是 "it is the last place that I want to visit"。正确答案为 B。
7. A. that 作副词时, 相当于 so, 强调所指的某一程度; much 作副词时, 一般只用来修饰形容词或副词的比较级及动词; enough 作副词时, 放在形容词或副词之后; too 作副词时强调事物的程度已超出某范围, 让人难以应付。正确答案为 A。
8. A. 该句意为: 一个演员没有生活经历就无法扮演好角色, 就如一位舞者没有大量练习就无法提高表演水平。no more than 连接两者的时候, 表示前后都否定, 而 no 可以相当于 not a/any, 这样可以推出 not... any more than 结构, 所以答案为 A 项。
9. B. 前者 smell 是系动词, 与形容词 bad 构成系表结构; 后者 smell 是行为动词, 由副词 badly 修饰。句意为"我们不在乎猎狗闻起来难闻, 但是我们确实不希望它的嗅觉能力差"。
10. B. 倍数的表达方式有三种: "倍数 + the + 相应名词(weight, size, length, height...) + of"; "倍数 + 比较级 + than" 和 "倍数 + as + 原级 + as"。阅读四个选



项可知正确答案为 B。

11. B。由 "not at all" 可推知答话人持的是否定态度,可排除 C、D 两项,比较级用于否定句中则表示最高级的含义,意为 "It was the worst"。答案为 B。
12. D。enough 作为副词,应放在它所修饰的形容词之后,故排除 B、C 两项;又因为 big enough 短语作定语修饰名词,应放在名词的后面,所以答案为 D。
13. C。perfect 没有最高级,可排除 B、D 两项;不定冠词表泛指, a better one 意为 "一个更好的"。所以答案为 C。
14. C。deep 作副词用指具体的深度;deeply 作副词表示抽象意义,意为 "深深地"。
15. D。考查四个短语的含意。四个短语中只有 as good as(意为 "几乎")符合句意。

专题六 代词



考点聚焦

代词在近几年高考试题中出现频率很高,常以对话形式构成特定的语境,考查考生灵活运用代词的能力。考点主要为人称代词、指示代词、不定代词以及代词表示全部与部分的用法等。

考查的角度有两个:一是考查代词之间的意义和功能差别,如 it, that, one 不同的指代功能;二是语法特征差异。



重点突破



重点 1 人称代词

人称代词的主格通常用作主语,宾格用作宾语,这是一般规则。在某些语境中,人称代词的主格与宾格的选择往往与传统"规定"格格不入。

1. 人称代词单独使用时,一般不用主格而用宾格。如:

—Who can drive a bus? 谁会开公共汽车?

—Me. 我。

注意 如果带谓语,就得用主格。如 I can, I do, So do I 等。

2. 表示惊奇、猜疑、反问、不满、厌烦等情绪。如:

—Do you have good eyesight, young man? 小家伙,你的视力好吗?

—Me? I can see a sparrow two hundred paces away. 我?我能看见一只两百步外的麻雀。

3. 代替 as, than 等连词之后的主格(多用于口语中,尤其用于句末)。如:

I'm not as careful as *him*. 我没有他细心。

『典例』 I intended to compare notes with a friend, but unfortunately _____ couldn't spare me even one minute.

代
词

It's about keeping your head when they're losing theirs.

口语
点滴



- A. they B. one C. who D. it

『解析』 A。compare notes"交流体会,交换意见"。根据 a friend 和 but,可以排除 who 和代词 it they = my friends,表示泛指,是比较符合当时的语境的。



重点 2 不定代词

几组易混的不定代词:

1. some 类不定代词与 any 类不定代词

some 类不定代词多用于肯定句中,但在表示客气的请求或希望对方给予肯定回答的疑问句中,要用 some 类不定代词。any 类不定代词多用于疑问句、否定句和条件状语从句中。any 类不定代词用在肯定句中,表示"任何(一个),不论哪个"。

『典例 1』 Don't worry if you can't come to _____ party — I'll save _____ cake for you.

- A. the ;some B. a ;much C. the ;any D. a ;little

『解析』 A。根据语境第一空表示特指,用定冠词;第二空 some 用于肯定句,表示"一些"。

2. all, both, neither

(1) all 指两个以上的全部,并可以和不可数名词连用;

(2) both 仅指两个的全部,只能与可数名词连用;

(3) neither 常和 of 连用,放在带有冠词、物主代词或指示代词的复数名词之前,作主语时,谓语动词可以用单数或复数。

『典例 2』 If you can't decide which of the two books to borrow, why don't you take _____? I won't read them this week. (06 年浙江卷)

- A. all B. any C. either D. both

『解析』 D。根据前后语境,说话者建议对方同时借两本书。

3. any, either, each, every

(1) any 一般用于否定句、疑问句和条件句中,可以用来修饰可数名词单数,表示三者或三者以上中的"任何一个"。

注意:以 any 开头的句子,不可以用 not 否定。如"Any child can't do that"应改为"No child can do that"。

(2) either 作代词,表示两者中的任何一个。

(3) each 指两个或两个以上的人或物中的"每个",侧重个体,each 作代词常与 of 短语连用。

(4) every 侧重"全体",有"所有,无一例外"之意,相当于 all,不能用作代词。

『典例 3』 —Which of the three ways shall I take to the village?

—_____ way as you please.

- A. Each B. Every C. Any D. Either

『解析』 C。根据上下文可知,本题用 any 表示三种方法中的任何一种。故答案为 C。



4. something, anything, everything, nothing

(1) something 一般用于肯定句中,也可以用于表示邀请、征询意见的委婉问句中。

(2) anything 用于否定句、疑问句或条件句中。

(3) everything 意为“一切事物”,可用于肯定句或疑问句中。用于否定句时,表示部分否定,全部否定用 nothing 或 not anything。

(4) nothing 表示“什么也没有”,常用于陈述句,表示否定意义,不能与否定词连用。

注意:somebody/someone, anybody/anyone, nobody/no one, everybody/everyone 的用法同上。

『典例 4』 —Victor certainly cares too much about himself.

—Yes. He 's never interested in what _____ is doing.

A. no one else B. anyone else C. someone else D. nobody else

『解析』 B。no one else“没有其他人”;anyone else“其他任何人”;someone else“另外某人”;nobody else“没有其他人”。根据句意“Victor 从不对其他任何人做的事情感兴趣”,故 B 项正确。

『典例 5』 —One week 's time has been wasted.

—I can 't believe we did all that work for _____.

A. something B. nothing C. everything D. anything

『解析』 B。根据 waste 可知此题答案为 B 项,do sth. for nothing 意思是“做某事是徒劳的”。

5. no, no one, none, nobody

(1) no 不能单独使用, no = not a/not any, 作定语,后跟可数名词或不可数名词。

(2) no one 意为“没有人”,它只能指人,不能与 of 连用,作主语时,谓语动词只能用单数形式。

(3) nobody 指人,多用于回答 who 引导的疑问句。

(4) none 既可以指人,也可以指物,侧重数量,指三者或三者以上的人或物,后可接 of 短语,作主语时谓语动词可用复数,也可用单数。

『典例 6』 Of all the books on the desk, _____ is of any use for our study.

A. nothing B. no one C. neither D. none

『解析』 D。根据句意“桌子上的所有书籍,没有一本对我们学习有用”,所填选项指的是物,排除 B;不涉及明确的人或物时,用 nobody 或 nothing,因此排除 A 项;none 可以指代前面提到的人或物,所以 D 项正确。



难点解疑



难点 1 It 的用法

英语中,运用 it 的场合较多。从它在句中的作用和意义来看,其用法可分为



三类：

1. 指代作用

(1) 用作人称代词，代替前文或后文所提到过的事物（单数或不可数）。

注意：指复数事物时，要用 *it* 的复数形式 *they*（主格）或 *them*（宾格）。

(2) 可指动物或婴儿（未知性别的婴儿和孩子）。

(3) 指环境、情形等。如 *It* was very quiet at the moment. 当时非常安静。

(4) 指度量衡单位、时间、距离、季节、天气等。

『典例 1』 If I can help _____, I don't like working late into the night. (06 年全国卷 I)

A. so B. that C. it D. them

『解析』 C. *it* 在此指代一种情形。

2. 形式作用

(1) 形式主语

动词不定式、*v-ing* 形式或从句作主语时，通常放在谓语之后，而用 *it* 作句子的形式主语。

注意：不要与 *there is no ...* “没有……”的结构混淆，形式主语与主句间无逗号分隔。

『典例 2』 _____ is our belief that improvements in health care will lead to a stronger, more prosperous economy. (06 年浙江卷)

A. As B. That C. This D. It

『解析』 D. *it* 作形式主语，代替真正的主语——*that* 引导的主语从句。

(2) 形式宾语

当复合宾语中的宾语是不定式、*v-ing* 形式或宾语从句时，往往把真正的宾语放在它的补足语后面，而用 *it* 作形式宾语，放在宾语补足语之前。

注意：形式宾语用在“主语 + 谓语动词 + 宾语”结构中，主要有下列三种情形：

★谓语动词 *appreciate*, *dislike*, *hate*, *like*, *love*, *make*（按时到达，成功）等后接由 *if* 或 *when* 等引导的从句时，往往在从句前加形式宾语 *it*。如：

《试
题
调
研》

The boy likes *it* when he 's praised before guests. 那个男孩喜欢在客人面前受表扬的时刻。

★动词 *take*（认为，猜想），*hide*（隐瞒），*publish*（公布）等后接由 *that* 引导的宾语从句时，往往从句前加上形式宾语 *it*。

《第
二
辑》

★动词短语 *answer for*（担保），*count on*（期待），*depend on*，*insist on*，*see to*（确保）等后接 *that* 引导的宾语从句时，必须冠以形式宾语 *it*。如：

I am counting on *it* that you will come. 我期待着你的到来。

『典例 3』 As the busiest woman in Norton, she made _____ her duty to look after all the other people 's affairs in that town. (06 年湖南卷)

A. this B. that C. one D. it

『解析』 D. *it* 作形式宾语，代替真正的宾语即不定式短语 *to look after ...*。



难点2 替代词 **one, ones, that** 和 **those** 的用法区别

1. **one** 可代替前面提到过的同一类人或物(可以单独使用,表泛指。也可以被冠词、代词、数量词、形容词或定语从句修饰),复数为 **ones**。如:

The books that are popular with children are not always the **ones** with pictures. 受到孩子们欢迎的书不一定总是带有插图的书。(the ones = the books)

2. **that** 代替上文中出现的名词,它表示与前面同类的东西,并非同一个,既可代替可数名词,也可代替不可数名词,常要求有后置定语(一般不指人),复数为 **those**。如:

The best cigarettes are **those** from Yunnan. 最好的香烟是从云南来的那些。

『典例』 I'm moving to the countryside because the air there is much fresher than ___ in the city.

- A. ones B. one C. that D. those

『解析』 C. **that** 代替前面出现的不可数名词 **air**, 以免重复。



强化闯关

- The book is of great value. _____ can be enjoyed from it until you have a deep understanding of it, however.
A. Nothing B. Few C. Something D. Much
- I wanted some string but there was _____ in the house.
A. nothing B. none C. no one D. not one
- Excuse me, can you tell me where I can find a supermarket?
—I happen to know _____ nearby. Come on, I'll show you the way.
A. some B. it C. that D. one
- Listening to the lectures given by the famous professors is an exciting moment, _____ I am looking forward to.
A. what B. that C. it D. one
- I've learned _____, no matter what happens and how bad _____ seems today, life goes on and it will be better tomorrow.
A. that; it B. it; that C. it; it D. that; that
- He was glad to learn _____ was among the names ticked off as finalists.
A. his B. he C. himself D. he himself
- Do you really believe that Mr. White has blamed us for the accident, especially _____?
A. you and me B. I and you C. you and I D. you and we
- Which share is meant for me?
—You can take _____ half. They're exactly the same.
A. any B. neither C. both D. either
- Where can I get the delicious food you bought yesterday?

代词

I stayed almost three nights straight.

口语
点滴



- It is sold everywhere. You can get it at _____ shop.
A. each B. any C. some D. certain
10. —How do you like _____ here so far, Mr. Cox?
—Well, I've really enjoyed meeting many nice people here and everything here is quite different.
A. it B. them C. that D. this
11. The mistakes made by Chinese students are quite different from _____ made by the Japanese students in English study.
A. that B. one C. what D. those
12. From the chart we can learn that the max temperature in Auckland is nearly 30°C higher than _____ in Wellington.
A. it is B. that C. what is D. one
13. —Your article is not so good.
—But I think mine is better than _____.
A. anyone's B. anyone else C. anyone else's D. anyone's else
14. I don't like this one. Please show me _____.
A. one B. another C. others D. any
15. It is easy to do repairs to the desk. _____ you need is only a hammer and some nails.
A. Something B. All C. Both D. Everything



答案与解析

1. A. 句末 however 给我们暗示: 书的价值很高, 但如果我们不深入理解就不能发现它的价值所在。
2. B. 表示同类物品中的“数量”时用 none, nothing 表示“什么都没有”, 指所有的物品, no one 一般指人, not one 修饰可数名词。本题中 string 是不可数名词, 只有 none 可以修饰它。
3. D. 不定代词 one 代表一个泛指的可数名词单数, 在此指代上文提到的 a super-market, 表示“同名称但不同的东西”。it 表示“同名称且同一个东西”, that 表示“同名称但不同的东西”, 常代指不可数名词, some“某一个”。
4. D. “,”不能引导联句, 而选项中的词都不是关系代词, 故用 one 作同位语, 代替 moment, 后面是省略 that 的定语从句。
5. A. that 引导宾语从句, it 指代 life。该题的难度在于宾语从句中含有 no matter 引导的让步状语从句置于主句与宾语从句之间, 并用逗号隔开, 如果将 no matter 从句放到句后, 该题的难度就降低了许多。
6. A. 根据题中的信息词 among the names, 应选 A, 在这里 his 是名词性物主代词, 相当于 his name。
7. A. 选项 A you and me 作 us 的同位语, 也是 blame 的宾语, 所以用宾格。
8. D. 句中的 half 是关键词, 它暗含“两个”的意思, either 指两者中的任何一个, any



- 指三个或三个以上的任一个, neither 与题意不符, both 用于复数名词前。故选 D。
9. B. 根据 "It is sold everywhere" 可知, 应选 B 项, 表示 "任何" 的意思。
10. A. it 为形式宾语, 无具体意义。
11. D. those 代替前面的复数名词 mistakes。其他选项都不可代替复数名词。
12. B. that 指代抽象名词 max temperature。其他选项不可代替抽象名词。
13. C. anyone else 的所有格形式为 anyone else 's。
14. B. another 指不定数目中的另一个, 是泛指。
15. B. all 代替事物属单数概念, A、D 选项不符合 easy 和 only 的语气, both 是复数概念, 与单数谓语不一致。

专题七 情态动词与虚拟语气



考点聚焦

情态动词与虚拟语气是历年高考的重点。情态动词主要考查其表示 "推测和可能性" 的用法, "情态动词 + 完成式" 结构以及 shall, should, can 和 must 表示特定语气时的用法; 虚拟语气的考点常集中在含蓄条件句以及各种从句的虚拟语气上, 所设选项常通过谓语动词的特殊形式来表示, 并且结合具体语境来考查考生对知识的运用能力。



重点突破



重点 1 几组常见情态动词的含义及用法

1. **be able to** 和 **can** 都可表示做事能力, 这时两者可通用。但是要注意:

(1) can 只能用于一般过去时 (could) 和一般现在时, 而 be able to 可用于任何时态。

(2) could 和 was/were able to 都能表示过去的 "一般能力", 但表示经过努力而成功的某一次动作, 只能用 was/were able to。

『典例 1』 The fire spread through the hotel very quickly but everyone _____ get out.

A. had to B. would C. could D. was able to

『解析』 D。在大火中逃生当然是要经过努力, 所以要用 was able to。

2. **can, could, may, might**

(1) can, could, may, might 都可以用来表示 "请求允许做某事", 其中 can 是最常用的 (多用于非正式的文体中), 用 could 要比用 can 时的语气更加委婉。may 和 might 用于较正式的文体中, 往往含有 "尊重" 之意。might 表示比较迟疑, 不很常用。

(2) 当表示 "允许某人做某事" 时, 我们可以用 can 和 may 来表达, 但不能用 could



或 might。使用 could 和 might 时句子包含“尊敬”之意，因此用在请求允许比用在给予允许时更加自然些。

『典例 2』 We hope that as many people as possible _____ join us for the picnic tomorrow. (06 年全国卷 II)

A. need B. must C. should D. can

『解析』 D。can 表示“许可”，need“必要”，should“应该”，must“必须”。用 can 符合语意“我们希望能有尽可能多的人加入到我们明天的野餐中”。

3. have to, must, should, ought to

(1) have to (英式英语中用 have got to) 一般用于谈论某种来自“外界”的义务，即强调客观需要。must 着重说明“主观认为”。

注意：★ must“主观认为”此含义的否定形式为 don't have to, needn't, 不能用 mustn't 因为 mustn't 表示“禁止，不准”。

★ 在提问中，must 一词是询问对方的意愿的，其肯定回答用 Yes, please/I'm afraid so/Yes, you must。否定回答应用 needn't 或 don't have to, 表示“不必”。

★ must 无过去式，讲过去的一项义务时，通常用 had to 来表达（但 must 可用于间接引语中）。

(2) should 和 ought to 两者意义很近，常通用，用来表达职责和义务，提出劝告，说明人们应该去做的正确的事情或好事。其区别在于 should 更侧重自己的主观看法，ought to 则更多反映客观情况，在谈到法律、义务和规定（或要使自己的意见听起来像义务或法律一样有力）时使用。

『典例 3』 Tom, you _____ leave all your clothes on the floor like this!

A. wouldn't B. mustn't C. needn't D. may not

『解析』 B。mustn't 表示“禁止，不允许”，符合语境；wouldn't 表示“不愿”；needn't“不必”，may not“可以不”。

4. shall, will, would

(1) 用 shall, will 时，当主语为第一人称，并且表示意图或用作助动词表示将来时，两者通用，但当主语为二、三人称时，只能用 will。

(2) shall 常用于：

① 在提供帮助、提出建议或要求、给以指示和征求意见时，用 shall 与第一人称搭配。

② shall 在疑问句中，用于第三人称，表示征询听话人是否愿意。

③ 当说话者要表达一种强烈的感情（如保证或威胁）时，shall 常用在第二人称和第三人称中。如：You *shall* suffer for this! 你会为这件事吃苦头的！

(3) will 常用于：

① I will 是用来表示自愿做某事，或主动提出做某事，也可用来表达坚定的意图：作出保证或提出威胁。

② will 与 you 连用常用来提出邀请、要求或下命令。won't you 可以加强邀请的语气。



③可用 *won't* 来表示拒绝。*won't* 还可用来指某物“拒绝”做我们要它做的事情。如：The car *won't* start. 汽车发动不起来。

④*will* 可用来表示习惯和特性，尤其是不受时间限制而必然发生的情况。

(4) *would* 用于以下情况：①表示强烈的愿望、意愿。②表示请求语气时用 *would* 代替 *will*，则会显得更客气。

『典例 4』 —What's the name?

—Khulaifi. _____ I spell that for you? (06 年北京卷)

A. Shall B. Would C. Can D. Might

『解析』 A。根据语境可以看出是征求对方意见，因此应该用 *shall*。



重点 2 虚拟语气在条件句中的使用

1. 表示与现在事实相反的假设

条件状语从句的谓语动词用过去式(*be* 的过去式用 *were*)，主句用“*would/should/could/might* + 动词原形”。

『典例 1』 If I _____ plan to do anything I wanted to, I'd like to go to Tibet and travel through as much of it as possible.

A. would B. could C. had to D. ought to

『解析』 B。*could* 为虚拟语气，用在条件句中，表示与现在事实相反。

2. 表示与过去事实相反

条件状语从句中的谓语动词用“*had* + 过去分词”，主句的谓语动词用“*would/should/could/might* + *have* + 过去分词”。如：

If you *had taken* my advice, you *wouldn't have failed* in the examination. 如果你能采纳我的意见，你就不会考试不及格。

3. 表示与将来事实相反

条件状语从句中的谓语动词用过去式(*be* 的过去式用 *were*)或 *were to* (*should*) + 动词原形，主句的谓语动词用“*would/should/could/might* + 动词原形”。如：

If it *were to rain* tomorrow, the meeting *would be put off*. 如果明天下雨，就推迟会议。

4. 当条件从句表示的行为和主句表示的行为所发生的时间不一致时，动词的形式要根据它所表示的时间来调整。如：

If you *had worked* hard, you *would be* very tired. 如果你努力工作了，那么现在你会很累。(从句说的是过去，主句指的是现在)

『典例 2』 It is hard for me to imagine what I would be doing today if I _____ in love, at the age of seven, with the Melinda Cox Library in my hometown.

A. wouldn't have fallen B. had not fallen

C. should fall D. were to fall

『解析』 B。根据句意和 I would be doing 可以判断这是虚拟语气。at the age of seven 是表示过去的时间状语，所以 if 从句中谓语动词要用 had not fallen，表示对过去



情况的假设。should fall 和 were to fall 都可以用于条件句中 表示对将来的假设；wouldn't have fallen 不用于条件句中，所以 A、C、D 三项都不能作为答案。

5. 如果虚拟条件状语从句中有 had/were/should, 可以把其提至句首, 把连词 if 省略, 从而形成倒装。

『典例 3』 _____ fired, your health care and other benefits will not be immediately cut off. (06 年湖北卷)

A. Would you be B. Should you be C. Could you be D. Might you be

『解析』 B。该题的主句表示真实的情况, 条件状语从句表示假设, 并且省略了 if, 所以句子要倒装。



重点 3 虚拟语气在其他从句中的使用

1. 英语中有些动词后面的宾语从句或某些主语从句的谓语动词常用虚拟语气, 即“(should)+ 动词原形” 我们可以用“一、二、三、四”法巧记这些动词:

“一、二、三、四”法, 即: 一个坚持(**insist**), 两个命令(**order, command**), 三个建议(**suggest, propose, advise**) 四个要求(**demand, require, request, ask**)。

注意: 以上的十个动词后在以下情况不用虚拟语气:

★He insisted that he had not ever been there. 他坚持说他没去过那。(insist 不是“坚持认为”, 而是“坚持说”的意思)

★His accent suggests that he is from the south. 他的口音表明他是南方人。(suggest 作“表明”讲, 不是“建议”)

『典例 1』 _____ be sent to work there?

A. Who do you suggest B. Who do you suggest that should
C. Do you suggest who should D. Do you suggest whom should

『解析』 A。题中 who 是对 suggest 后宾语从句的主语进行提问, suggest 表示“建议”后接宾语从句时谓语动词要用“(should)+ 动词原形”, should 可以省略。

2. 在“ It ' s necessary/important/strange/natural/pity/desired/suggested/required that... ”句型中, 后面的主语从句的谓语动词用“(should)+ 动词原形”结构。

3. 在 suggestion, notion, proposal, order, plan, idea, advice, demand 等后面的表语从句和同位语从句中, 谓语动词用“(should)+ 动词原形”。

4. 动词 wish, would rather 后面的宾语从句要用虚拟语气, 通常表示不可实现的愿望。

『典例 2』 I would rather you _____ me about the news as soon as you get it.

A. told B. will tell C. would tell D. can tell

『解析』 A。从后面的时间状语从句可看出指将来, would rather 后接宾语从句时用过去时表示不大可能实现的愿望。

5. 在 as if/as though 引导的从句中, 谓语动词的变化与 wish 后的宾语从句一样。

『典例 3』 Eliza remembers everything exactly as if it _____ yesterday. (06 年全国卷 I)

A. was happening B. happens C. has happened D. happened



- A. must B. ought to C. need have D. should have
12. Just as we were sitting down to have dinner ,the telephone _____ ring.
A. must B. could C. might D. need
13. —Would you like to stay for another two days ?
—Sorry ,I _____. One of my best friends is coming to see me.
A. mustn 't B. can 't C. needn 't D. won 't
14. You _____ pay too much attention to your reading skill , as it is so important.
A. can 't B. should C. must D. needn 't
15. She _____ into the thick forest alone on such a dark night.
A. dares not go B. dares not to go
C. dare not to go D. doesn 't dare to go



答案与解析

1. B. 由后一句可知 Jenny 应遵守诺言而实际上没有。因此应用 should have done 表示该做某事而没有做。
2. D. 文中"strangers"说明两个人事实上不是老朋友,as if 后接从句用 were 或 had been 表示与现在、将来或过去相反的事实。
3. C. 第一个 insist 意为"坚持要求",因此其后用虚拟语气;第二个 insist 意为"坚持认为",其后接陈述语气的从句,不用虚拟语气。
4. D. 该句的意思是"如果没有虚拟语气,英语可能会更容易一些。根据题意可知,后句是与现在事实相反的一种假设。
5. B. 考查情态动词。could 用于疑问句表示有礼貌的请求,不表示时态,因此回答时用 can。
6. C. 此题考查与现在事实相反的虚拟语气,条件句省略 if,要将 were 放在句首。
7. D. 在 advice, idea, order, demand, plan, proposal, suggestion, request 等名词后的表语从句和同位语从句中,谓语动词要用虚拟语气结构"(should) + 动词原形"。
8. A. 由题干 under the more favourable conditions 可知,此题考查与过去事实相反的虚拟语气。
9. C. 根据上下文的语境及说话人的语气,可知选项动作是经过努力才完成的,在这种语气的肯定句和疑问句中,常用 be able to,在否定句中用 can。
10. B. should 用于条件状语从句或让步状语从句中,表示"万一……的话;即使……也"。如 if she should know the truth, she would be greatly depressed. 万一她知道了实情,她将会非常沮丧。
11. D. 根据上下文和讲话人的语气,本题应用虚拟语气表示"过去本该做某事而实际未做",可以用 should have done 或 ought to have done 两种形式。故答案为 D。
12. A. must 在此表示说话人的愿望或感到不耐烦,意为"偏要"。该句的意思是:正当我们要坐下来吃饭时,偏偏电话铃响了。
13. B. can 't 表示一种客观可能性;mustn 't 表示绝对否定"一定不";needn 't 意为



4. dozen (十二), score (二十)前有具体数词或 some, several 等词时,不用复数,如 two dozen eggs 两打鸡蛋;dozen, score 的复数形式后接 of 短语时,表"许多",是概数,如 dozens of eggs 几十个鸡蛋;scores of chairs 几十把椅子;此外,一般不用"数词 + dozen + of + 名词"这种表达方式,但有"数词 + score + of + 名词"的表达方式。如: three score of eggs 六十个鸡蛋。

『典例 2』 Shortly after the accident, two _____ police were sent to the spot to keep order.

- A. dozen of B. dozens C. dozen D. dozens of

『解析』 C。dozen, score, thousand, million 等与基数词连用时用单数形式;当后面有介词 of 短语时,它们用复数形式,且不可同时与基数词连用。



重点 2 名词作主语时数的问题

1. 下列名词作主语时谓语动词用单数:可数名词单数形式;不可数名词;表示时间、距离、金钱、度量、容量、书名等整体概念的名词;有不定代词 each/every/no 所修饰的名词或由 and 连接的并列名词;以 -ics 结尾的学科名词;the number of 修饰的复数名词;集体名词表示整体。

『典例 1』 As you can see, the number of cars on roads _____ rising these days.
(06 年全国卷 II)

- A. was keeping B. keep C. keeps D. were keeping

『解析』 C。the number of... 作主语,谓语动词用单数。

2. 下面名词作主语时谓语动词用复数:可数名词复数;集体名词表示个体时。

『典例 2』 Class 3 _____ on the farm. Let's go and help them.

- A. is working B. are working
C. is going to work D. are going to work

『解析』 从该题后一句可以看出指的是三班的全体同学,所以答案应该是 B。



重点 3 分数、不定量词作主语时数的问题

1. "分数或百分数 + of + 名词"作主语,谓语动词的数与名词的数保持一致。

『典例 1』 The company had about 20 notebook computers but only one-third _____ used regularly. Now we have 60 working all day long. (06 年江苏卷)

- A. is B. are C. was D. were

『解析』 D。该题中分数后省略了 of the computers, 所以谓语动词用复数,根据句子前、后部分提供的信息可看出谈论的是过去,所以用一般过去时。

2. "many a + 单名"接单数谓语;"a good (great) many + 复名"接复数谓语。如:

Many a man has tried it before. 以前不止一个人试过。

3. "a / an + 单名 + or two" 大多接单数谓语;"one or two + 复名"接复数谓语。如:
Only *a word or two is* (are) needed. 只需说一两句。

One or two reasons were suggested. 提出一两条理由。

4. "a / an + 单名 + and a half" 常接单数谓语 ; "one and a half + 复名" 多接复数谓语。如 :

A year and a half has passed. 一年半已过去了。

One and a half tons of rice are sold. 已卖了一吨半大米。

5. "more than one + 单名" 大多接单数谓语 ; "more + 复名 + than one" 接复数谓语 ; "more than two (three. . .) + 复名" 接复数谓语。如 :

More than one person was absent. 不止一个人缺席。

More students than one have been there. 不止一个学生去过那儿。

More than one hundred students have attended the concert. 不止一百名学生听了这场音乐会。

6. 主语前加表示单位、度量的短语如 "a kind (sort / type / form / pair / cup / glass / piece / load / block / box / handful / quantity / ton / metre / . . .) of" 等时 , 表示 "单位、度量" 的这个名词的单复数决定谓语形式。

『典例 2』 With more forests being destroyed , huge quantities of good earth _____ each year.

A. is washing away

B. is being washed away

C. are washing away

D. are being washed away

『解析』 D. 此题考查语态和主谓一致。quantities of . . . 作主语 , 谓语动词用复数 , earth 与 wash away 是被动关系 , 所以用被动语态。



难点解疑



难点 1 谓语动词用单数的情况

1. 非谓语动词、从句作主语时。

『典例』 Most of what has been said about the Smiths _____ also true of the Johnsons. (06 年安徽卷)

A. are

B. is

C. being

D. to be

『解析』 B. 在本题中 , most 为代词 , 作句子的主语 , 若指单数概念 , 谓语动词用单数形式。该句的主语是 most , 后被 " of + 从句 " 修饰 , 所填选项是谓语动词 , 故排除 C、D 选项。most 作主语时 , 谓语动词的数应与 most 后的词的数保持一致 , 该题 most 后接的是从句 , 所以谓语动词用单数。

2. 引号中的词作为整体看待时。如 :

"Bikes" is the plural form of "bike". "bikes" 是 "bike" 的复数形式。

3. "either/neither/none of + 名词复数" 作主语时 , 谓语动词一般用单数。有时也可用复数 , 但不是很正式的用法。如 :

Neither of the plans suits / suit me. 两个计划都不适合我。

数
词
与
主
谓
一
致

The little girl is from the Big Apple.

经典
俚语





难点2 连接词与主谓一致

1. 两个作主语的单数名词或代词由 and, both... and 连接, 根据语法一致的原则, 谓语动词用复数形式。但并列主语指的是同一个人、同一个物、同一件事(这时 and 后的名词没有冠词)或表示一个单一概念, 谓语动词要用单数形式。

『典例1』 A poet and artist _____ coming to speak to us about Chinese literature and painting tomorrow afternoon. (06年江苏卷)

- A. is B. are C. was D. were

『解析』 A。and 连接的第二个名词前不用冠词, 说明"poet"和"artist"为同一个人, 所以谓语动词用单数。

2. 如果主语是单数, 尽管后面有 with, together with, as well as, like, but, except, including 等连词引导的短语, 谓语动词仍用单数形式。

『典例2』 The father as well as his three children _____ skating on the frozen river every Sunday afternoon in winter. (06年辽宁卷)

- A. is going B. go C. goes D. are going

『解析』 C。as well as 连接并列主语时, 谓语动词与前面的主语保持数的一致。句意为"父亲和他的三个孩子在冬天每周日下午都会去结冰的河面上滑冰"。

3. 两个或两个以上的主语由 neither... nor, either... or, or, not only... but also... 连接时, 通常根据就近原则, 谓语动词与它最近的主语在人称和数上保持一致。

『典例3』 Not only I but also Jane and Mary _____ tired of having one examination after another.

- A. is B. are C. am D. be

『解析』 B。根据就近原则, 谓语动词同最近的主语 Jane and Mary 在人称和数上要保持一致。故选 B。



强化闯关

《 试题调研 》 (第二辑)

1. —Mike, what did our monitor say just now?

—Every boy and every girl as well as teachers who _____ to visit the museum _____ asked to be at the school gate before 6:30 in the morning.

- A. is ; is B. are ; are C. is ; are D. are ; is

2. Children under sixteen are not permitted to see such kind of films _____ bad for their mental development.

- A. that is B. that are C. as is D. as are

3. —What 's your favourite in your spare time, Jack?

—Writing stories and articles _____ what I enjoy most.

- A. is B. was C. were D. are

4. —Are the new machines working?

—Yes. Three million tons of coal _____ exploited every year in the city.





答案与解析

1. D. 该题为一个含有定语从句的复合句,句中作定语的关系代词 who 指代先行词 teachers,为复数,故谓语动词用 are;as well as 连接两个主语时,谓语动词要根据前一个主语决定;由 every, no, each 等限定的并由 and 连接的两个并列名词作主语时,谓语动词要用单数形式。
2. C. 分析句子意思及结构,该句为 such... as 引导的定语从句,不属 such... that 引导的结果状语从句,故排除 A、B;在"kind of + 名词"作主语时,其谓语动词的数要与 kind 保持一致,故该句中的谓语动词用单数。
3. A. 分析句子可知,该题是"动名词 + 名词复数"作主语,在这一结构中,谓语动词应由动名词决定,"写小说和文章"是强调"写作"这一概念,为单数形式,表示现在的状态。
4. B. 句中 coal 为不可数名词,被 three million tons of 限定,在句中作主语。这时,句子的谓语动词的数应与 of 短语中表示"数量"的名词 tons 一致,故要选复数形式的谓语动词。根据句子意思,选项部分为一般现在时的被动结构,故选 B。
5. A. 根据句意可知,句中的关系代词 which 所指代的先行词 novel 为一整体概念的名词,应视为单数,说明代词 the rest 为 novel 的一部分,也应该视为单数形式,故句子的谓语动词为单数形式,强调现状,用一般现在时。
6. A. 句中 and 连接的两个名词为表示人的职业的名词,当两个名词前被一个冠词限时,应视为单数,表示一个人;当两个名词前分别有冠词限时,应视为复数,表示两个人。根据句子结构,定语从句的关系代词 who 指代的先行词就是前面的单数名词,故定语从句的谓语动词也应为单数形式。
7. B. a number of 意为"许多",后接复数名词作主语时,应视为复数,谓语动词要用复数形式;the number of 后接复数名词,意为".....的数量",表示单数含义,谓语动词要用单数形式。故选 B。
8. A. 一般情况下,what 引导主语从句,常表示单数意义,谓语动词用单数形式,但当它所指的具体内容是复数意义时,谓语动词要用复数形式。该题强调现在,用一般现在时。
9. B. 在 there be 句型中,如果有两个以上名词,be 动词与最近的名词在数上保持一致,故第一空用 is,第二空为地点状语前置,选项后的名词为句子的主语,为复数名词,故谓语动词要用复数形式。
10. D. 题干中的主语 the Arabian Nights 是书名,形式上是复数,但谓语动词要用单数;"many a + 名词单数"后接谓语单数。
11. D. 第一空的主语 the young 意为"年轻人",表示复数意义,故谓语动词用复数形式,且用主动语态;第二空"one and a half + 复数名词",常视为单数意义,谓语动词用单数形式,且用被动语态。
12. C. 两个或两个以上的不定式、动名词(当不指同一件事或同一概念时)或从句作主语时,谓语动词用复数;但如果属于同一概念,谓语动词要用单数。
13. D. "many a + 单数名词"的意思是"许多",但作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式;a few 用来修饰或指代复数名词,作主语时谓语动词用复数形式。



14. C. population 表示"人口"的总称,是不可数名词,作主语时谓语动词用单数,但当有分数修饰时,则看作是表示具体的人,所以谓语动词用复数。
15. A. 由于 one 被 only 修饰,可以判断定语从句的先行词就是 one,所以从句的谓语动词用单数形式。speak ill of... 意为"说.....的坏话"。

专题九 连词与介词



考点聚焦

连词主要考查并列连词和从属连词在句中的使用。对介词的考查比较灵活,必须掌握每个介词的用法,弄清易混介词用法的异同,此外,介词与动词、名词、形容词的习惯搭配也是考查的重点。



重点突破



重点 1 常用介词用法的区别

1. over, above, on, beyond

(1) over 一般表示"在.....的正上方(但未触及)", "在.....垂直上方", 其反义词是 under, over 还可表示"超过", 多用于年龄、时间和距离。

(2) above 一般表示"在.....的上方", 只说明物体间的上下关系, 可能垂直, 也可能不垂直, 另外 above 还可指在数量、重量、价格、费用等方面超过或高于规定的数量或一般标准。

(3) on 一般表示"在.....上面", 通常指与物体的表面有接触。

(4) beyond 一般指超过界限、范围、限度等。

『典例 1』 It 's quite _____ me why such things have been allowed to happen. (06 年安徽卷)

- A. for B. behind C. against D. beyond

『解析』 D. beyond 表示"超出.....之外", 符合题意"一直允许这样的事情发生的原因出乎我的意料"。

2. across, through, over, past

(1) across 指在某一空间内从一端到另一端或呈十字交叉穿过。

(2) over 指对于位置的高低而言, 强调"翻越", 也常表示跨过一段距离。

(3) through 指从人群或物体中间穿过, 也可用于抽象意义上的通过。

(4) past 表示"从.....旁经过", 表示运动发生在某物旁边。

『典例 2』 He suddenly saw Sue _____ the room. He pushed his way _____ the crowd of people to get to her.

- A. across, across B. over, through C. over, into D. across, through

连词与介词

That car is a lemon.

经典
俚语



『解析』 D。across 意为“在……对面”，push one's way through 是固定短语，意为“设法通过，挤过”。

3. at, in, on

(1) 表示确切的时间用 at，在非正式英语里，“(At) what time...”这一词组以及用于句首的其他表示时间的词组，通常可以省略 at。

(2) 表示一天的上午、下午、晚上用 in，即 in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening，但“在夜里”用 at night。如专指某一天的上(下)午、晚上，或要对这天上(下)午、晚上加以描述，应用 on，而不用 in，谈到具体的某一天，用 on，在星期几前面，on 可以省略(尤其在美语中)。

(3) 表示周末用 at the weekend(英)或 on the weekend(美)，泛指圣诞节、新年、复活节、感恩节时，都用 at，说到星期、月、季、年、世纪等较长时间时，要用 in。

『典例 3』 The accident is reported to have occurred _____ the first Sunday in February.

- A. at B. on C. in D. to

『解析』 B。该题中 Sunday 前面有 the first 具体描述，所以应该用介词 on。

4. by, with, in, through

(1) by 表示“乘……(交通工具)”，也指“通过……(方法)”。在表示方式，指抽象的或无形的手段时，其宾语一般是抽象名词、动名词，指具体手段时，其宾语通常是表示身体部位、交通工具或通讯方式等的名词。

(2) with 表示“以……为工具，手段”，一般接具体的手段和工具，不能接动名词。

(3) in 表示表达的方法、媒介、工具、材料等。

(4) through 表示“通过……途径/方式/方法”，一般是指具体或有形的手段，其宾语往往是具体的人或事物，有时也可接抽象名词，当表示媒介手段时可用 by 代替。

『典例 4』 I made the coat _____ my own hands. It was made _____ hand, not with a machine.

- A. in ; in B. in ; with C. with ; by D. with ; with

『解析』 C。表示“以……为工具”时用介词 with，by hand 是固定短语，表示方式。故选 C。

5. besides, except, except for, but

(1) besides 表示“除了……之外尚有(宾语包括在内)”，表示肯定。

(2) except 表示“除了……之外(宾语不包括在内)”，含有否定之意，表示同类事物之间的关系。except 后还可接 that 从句。

(3) except for 表示对主要部分的肯定和对局部的否定。它不表示同类事物之间的关系，意为“除了……之外”。

(4) but 作为介词和 except 同义，通常放在 any, every, no 以及含有这些词的复合不定代词之后。如 anybody, everyone, nobody 等。

『典例 5』 Does John know any other foreign languages _____ French ?

- A. expect B. but C. besides D. beside



『解析』 C。besides 意为“除……之外尚有”，符合句意“除懂法语外，约翰还懂其他语言吗？”



重点 2 常用连词的用法

1. 表示联合意义的并列连词有：

(1) both... and... 用来连接两个并列的词，当所连接的人或物作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

(2) as well as 意为“不仅……而且……”，“既……又……”。A as well as B 的意思是“不但 B，而且 A”，其重点在前者，而不在后者，as well as 连接两个并列成分作主语时，句子的谓语动词应与前面那个名词或代词的人称和数保持一致。

(3) 而 not only A but also B 则强调后者，可译为“不但 A，而且 B”，not only... but also... 连接两个并列成分作主语时，谓语动词要和邻近的主语保持数和人称的一致。

(4) neither... nor... 意为“既不……也不……”，可以连接主语、谓语、宾语、表语或状语，连接两个并列主语时，谓语动词一般与后面那个主语保持数的一致。

2. 表示转折的连词有：

but“而，但是”；yet“尽管，然而”；while“而（连接的两个句子是并列关系，表示对比）”。

『典例 1』 We thought there were 35 students in the dining hall, _____, in fact, there were 40. (06 年全国卷 I)

A. while B. whether C. what D. which

『解析』 A。while 表示对比，意为“然而”，符合句意“我们以为餐厅里有 35 名学生，而实际上有 40 名”。

3. 表示选择意义的连词有：

or“或者，还是，否则”，表示选择，两者居其一，otherwise“要不然”，常接在祈使句后面；either... or... 是并列连词短语，意为“要么……要么……”，当用来连接主语时，谓语动词的数要与和它最近的主语的数保持一致。

『典例 2』 I've got one more page to write; _____ I've finished.

A. or B. otherwise C. then D. and

『解析』 B。otherwise 意为“不然的话”，符合句意“我多写一页，不然的话早就完成了”，其他选项不合题意。



难点解疑



难点 1 使用介词时应注意的问题

1. for 和 of 都可以构成不定式复合结构的逻辑主语。

(1) It is + adj. + of sb. to do sth. = Sb. + be + adj. + to do sth.

当形容词说明不定式逻辑主语的性质、特征时，用 of。常见的形容词有：kind, good, nice, clever, stupid, foolish, considerate, polite, impolite, cruel 等。

As far as I can see, their success is a bit iffy.



(2) It is + *adj.* + for sb. to do sth.

当形容词说明不定式的性质时,用 for。常见的形容词有:important, necessary, possible, impossible 等。

2. 介词后接从句作宾语时,表示疑问时用 **whether** 引导;表示事实时,通常不能直接跟 **that** 从句,遇此情况应在介词后加 **the fact**。如:

They were worried over **the fact** that you were sick. 他们为你生病发愁。

『典例 1』 We haven't settled the question of _____ it is necessary for him to study abroad. (06 年江苏卷)

A. if B. where C. whether D. that

『解析』 C。该题考查介词后的宾语从句。根据句意宾语从句表示疑问,排除 B、D 选项;介词后的宾语从句不可用 if 引导,故 C 项正确。

3. 介词后接动词作宾语时,应用动名词形式。但 **except**, **but** 后面常接不定式作宾语,且这个不定式有时带 **to**(若其前没有实义动词 **do**),有时不带 **to**(若其前有实义动词 **do**)。

『典例 2』 He had no choice but _____ hard.

A. work B. to work C. working D. to be working

『解析』 B。介词 but, except, besides 后可接不定式作宾语,如果前面有实义动词 do,不定式的符号 to 则可以省略,本题无实义动词 do,所以该题中的 to 不可省略。

4. 表示时间的名词前有 **one**, **any**, **each**, **every**, **some**, **all**, **this**, **that**, **tomorrow**, **yesterday**, **last**, **next** 时,前面不用介词。如:

We've decided to have a maths test **tomorrow afternoon**. 我们决定明天下午进行数学测验。



难点 2 使用连词时应注意的问题

1. 表示转折意义的连词的典型错误:

(1) 她假装生气,却并未生气。

『误』 She pretended to be angry, **however** she was not.

『正』 She pretended to be angry, **but** she was not.

『析』 but 和 however 都可表示转折意义。but 为等立连词,连接两个并列句或并列词。however 不是连词,而是一个连接副词,它语气较弱,常用于附加说明,其后常有逗号,较为正式,它可放在句首、句中或句末。

(2) 虽然天冷,但我还是去游泳了。

『误』 **Though** the weather was cold, **but** I went swimming.

『正』 **Though** the weather was cold, I went swimming.

『析』 在英语中用 though 或 although 引导让步状语从句,主句中就不能用 but。

(3) 要是没有太阳,世界上什么生物都不能生存。

『误』 **But for** the sun, nothing in the world **can** live.

『正』 **But for** the sun, nothing in the world **could** live.



『析』 but for 意为“要不是……”，一般和虚拟语气连用。

2. 注意某些动词后面连词的用法：

discuss 后一般不用 if , 而用 whether ; doubt 在否定句和疑问句中 , 后接 that 从句 , 但在肯定句中后接 whether 或 if 从句。

I have (my) doubts about **whether** he is the best man for the job.

我怀疑他是否是做这项工作的最佳人选。

3. **whether** 可以引导主语从句、表语从句和同位语从句, 不定式前只能用 **whether**。

Whether the football game will be played depends on the weather. 足球比赛是否举行将视天气而定。



强化闯关

- She jumped with joy _____ the news _____ she had passed the entrance examination.
A. at ; that B. for ; which C. about ; / D. by ; /
- Isn 't _____ rude _____ him to talk to his mother like that ?
A. that ; for B. that ; of C. it ; for D. it ; of
- But how can we get so much money and so many workers soon ?
—You mean the problem _____ the project ?
A. with B. for C. at D. about
- The performance "the 1 000-hand Kwan-yin" , an unusual dance , is so moving and perfect that it is almost _____ all the viewers ' imagination.
A. outside B. within C. besides D. beyond
- As we have much time left , let 's discuss the matter _____ tea and cake.
A. over B. with C. by D. at
- Many large cities , such as Liverpool and New York , have had experiments of this kind , _____ old factories turned into successful art centers.
A. with B. for C. as D. like
- Mick 's new DVD player is only about 20cm _____ 15 cm and weighs _____ 2 kilos.
A. with ; in B. by ; about C. with ; for D. between ; over
- They were hunting for a person _____ him _____ a stepping-stone.
A. like ; as B. like ; like C. as ; like D. as ; as
- John saves his money , _____ George spends all he gets.
A. while B. or C. nor D. as
- What he wants to do will solve not only your problem , _____ mine.
A. but also B. but C. so D. for
- We 'll willingly give up our plan , _____ we 'll do whatever you want us to do.
A. but B. further more C. while D. yet

连词与介词

I bet he will pass the exam. It 's dollars to buttons.

经典
俚语



12. This summertime work has taught me a lot about who I am _____ what real life is.
A. as well B. but C. as well as D. then
13. _____ White _____ his sister is coming to our help. **Which is wrong?**
A. Either ; or B. Neither ; nor
C. Not only ; but also D. Both ; and
14. Although he stayed only a few days in the village , _____ he got to know everybody there.
A. and B. but C. yet D. so
15. Would you like a cup of coffee _____ shall we get down to business right away ?
A. and B. then C. or D. otherwise



答案与解析

1. A. at 表示"一听到,一看到",that 引导的是同位语从句。
2. D. 该句句型为:"It 's + adj. + of/for + sb. to do sth."。当句中的形容词是用来形容 sb. 的性质或特征,而不是形容不定式的性质,需用介词 of,否则当形容词用来说明不定式的情况时,用介词 for。
3. A. problem with... 为惯常搭配,意为".....的问题"。
4. D. beyond one 's imagination"超出某人的想象力";类似还有,beyond one 's power 意为"超出某人的能力范围",beyond one 's reach"超出某人的接触范围或能力范围"。
5. A. over 表示"一边.....一边.....",后半句的意思是:我们一边喝茶吃蛋糕,一边讨论这事。
6. A. 本题中的 turned into successful art centres 是修饰 old factories 的,所以缺少一个引导复合结构的词语,故选 A,介词 with 可以构成复合结构。
7. B. 此题考查介词的习惯用法。"长×宽"中的"×"读作 by;第二空 about 表示"大约"。
8. A. 介词 like 意为"像.....,如.....一样",as 作介词意思是"作为,当作"。本句的意思是:他们正在寻找一个像他那样的人当垫脚石。
9. A. while 表示两种情况的对比,多连接两个句子。
10. A. not only...but also 中的 but 常省略,also 不可省略,所以 B 项错误。
11. B. further more 意为"而且",有追加、递进之意,符合题意。
12. C. 该题中两个宾语从句并列,as well as = and。
13. D. 题中的谓语动词是单数,所以 D 项错误,both...and... 连接主语时,谓语动词用复数。
14. C. although 不能同时与 but 连用,但可以和 yet(still)连用。
15. C. or 表示选择,符合题意。



专题十 定语从句



考点聚焦

定语从句是历年高考的重点考查内容。考题中相对集中地考查了非限制性定语从句、关系代词和关系副词的选用、定语从句中的一致关系以及“介词+关系代词”等知识点。



重点突破



重点1 关系代词的考查

1. 当关系代词前有介词或引导非限制性定语从句时一般用 **which**, 不用 **that**。

『典例1』 The owner of the cinema needed to make a lot of improvements and employ more people to keep it running, _____ meant spending tens of thousands of pounds. (06年江苏卷)

- A. who B. that C. as D. which

『解析』 D. which 引导非限制性定语从句, 在从句中作主语。

2. 下列情况下宜用 **that**, 不宜用 **which**:

(1) 先行词为 all, much, little, everything, anything, nothing, none, the one 等代词时。如:

Is there **anything that** I can do for you? 需要我帮忙吗?

(2) 先行词前有 only, any, few, little, no, all, one of, same 等修饰语时。如:

You can take **any seat that** is free. 任何空位你都可以坐。

(3) 先行词是序数词或者先行词受序数词修饰时。如:

This is the **first** composition **that** I have written in English. 这是我用英语写的第一篇作文。

(4) 先行词是最高级形容词或先行词受最高级形容词修饰时。如:

This is **the best film that** has been shown this year. 这是今年放映的最好的一部电影。

(5) 先行词为系动词 be 后面的表语时。如:

It's a **book that** will help you a lot. 这是一本对你很有帮助的书。

(6) 主句以 there be 开头时。如:

There is a seat in the corner **that** is still free. 房角有个座位仍空着。

(7) 先行词为数词时。如:

Yesterday I caught two fish, now you can see **the two that** are still alive in a basin of water. 昨天我捉了两条鱼, 就是你现在看到的在水盆中活着的那两条。



(8) 先行词同时包含人和物时。如：

They talked about **things and persons** (*that*) they remembered in the school. 他们谈起了所记得的在校时的人和事。

3. 先行词指人, 在下列情况下多用 **who** 而不用 **that**：

(1) 关系代词在从句中作主语时, 多用 **who**。如：

A friend **who** helps you in time of need is a real friend. 患难见挚友。

(2) 先行词为 **those** 和 **people** 时多用 **who**。如：

Those who were either fools or unfit for their offices could not see the cloth. 那些笨蛋或不称职的人是看不见这些布的。

(3) 先行词为 **all**, **anyone**, **one**, **ones** 指人时, 多用 **who**。如：

One who doesn't work hard will never be happy. 不努力工作的人是永远不会快乐的。

(4) 在以 **there be** 开头的句子中多用 **who**。如：

There is a stranger **who** wants to see you. 有个陌生人要见你。

(5) 在非限制性定语从句中须用 **who**。如：

My sister, **who** is a teacher, can speak German well. 我姐姐德语讲得很好, 她是个教师。

(6) 在被分隔的定语从句中须用 **who**。如：

A new teacher will come tomorrow **who** will teach you German. 教你们德语的教师明天来。

(7) 一个句子带有两个定语从句, 其中的一个从句的关系代词是 **who**, 另一个是 **that**。如：

The student **who** was praised at the meeting is the monitor **that** is very modest and studies very hard. 在会上受到表扬的学生是班长, 他谦虚好学。

4. **whose** 在定语从句中作定语, 可与表所属关系的 **of which** 或 **of whom** 互相转换, 其语序是: 名词 + **of** + **which/whom**。如：

We had a meeting the **purpose of which** was completely unclear. (或... **whose purpose** was completely unclear) 我们开了会, 会议的目的完全不清楚。

如果 **of** 不表所属关系, 则 **of which/whom** 不可与 **whose** 转换。

『典例 2』 Look out! Don't get too close to the house _____ roof is under repair.

A. whose B. which C. of which D. what

『解析』 A. **whose** 在定语从句中作定语修饰名词 **roof**, 表所属。

5. **the way** 后接定语从句时, 如 **the way** 表方式、方法, 关系词可用 **in which**, **that** 或省略不用。

『典例 3』 What surprised me was not what he said but _____ he said it.

A. the way B. in the way that

C. in the way D. the way which

『解析』 A. 该题即为 **way** 后省略了关系代词的用法。





重点2 关系副词的考查

关系副词在定语从句中作状语 ,where 表示地点 ,when 表示时间 ,why 表示原因。

『典例1』 We 're just trying to reach a point _____ both sides will sit down together and talk. (06 年山东卷)

- A. where B. that C. when D. which

『解析』 A. 引导词 where 在定语从句中作状语 ,表示地点 ,其先行词表地点 ,相当于"介词 + which"。

『典例2』 If a shop has chairs _____ women can park their men ,women will spend more time in the shop.

- A. that B. which C. when D. where

『解析』 D. where 引导定语从句 ,在从句中作地点状语。



重点3 介词与关系词的搭配考查

"介词 + 关系代词" 引导定语从句时 ,介词的宾语只能用 which(指物)和 whom (指人) 。在使用时要注意关系代词前面介词的使用情况 :

1. 根据与前面名词的搭配关系选择

『典例1』 I was given three books on cooking ,the first _____ I really enjoyed.

- A. of that B. of which C. that D. which

『解析』 B. 该题是非限制性定语从句 ,修饰名词 books ,the first of which 相当于 the first of the books.

『典例2』 Mark was a student at this university from 1999 to 2003 , _____ , he studied very hard and was made Chairman of the Students ' Union.

- A. during which time B. for which time
C. during whose time D. by that time

『解析』 A. 先行词是 from 1999 to 2003 ,作限定词用的 which 在定语从句中也可与名词连用 ,这个结构比较正式 ,而且只有在介词后面才常用 ,根据句意应该用介词 during 表示"在.....期间"。

2. 根据定语从句后面的动词和介词的搭配关系选择

『典例3』 We saw several natives advancing towards our party , and one of them came up to us , _____ we gave some bells and glasses. (06 年湖南卷)

- A. to which B. to whom C. with whom D. with which

『解析』 B. 从句谓语动词是 give ,需用 give sth. to sb. 句型 ,故选 B.

3. 有时须同时考虑动词和介词的搭配关系及介词和名词的搭配关系

『典例4』 The schools themselves admit that not all children will be successful in the jobs _____ they are being trained.

- A. in that B. for that C. in which D. for which

『解析』 D. that 前不能用介词引导定语从句 ,故 A、B 错误 ;for which 引导定语



从句,在从句中表示目的,即 train sb. for sth.。



难点解疑



难点 **as** 和 **which** 引导定语从句的区别

1. **as** 和 **which** 都可以引导非限制性定语从句,用来修饰或限制整个主句的内容,有时可以换用。

『典例 1』 _____ I explained on the phone, your request will be considered at the next meeting.

- A. When B. After C. As D. Since

『解析』 C. as 位于句首引导非限制性定语从句,代指后面的情况。

『典例 2』 Jim passed the driving test, _____ surprised everybody in the office.

- A. which B. that C. this D. it

『解析』 A. which 引导非限制性定语从句,代指前面整个句子。

2. 在下面情况下 **as** 和 **which** 不能换用:

(1) 关系代词 **as** 既可引导限制性定语从句,也可引导非限制性定语从句,as 在从句中作主语、宾语或表语。常用于下列句式:① such + 名词 + as... "像.....一样的""像.....之类",the same + 名词 + as... "和.....同样的"。② 当先行词被 as, so 修饰时,通常用 as 引导限制性定语从句。③ ... such as... such 为代词,意为"这样的人或物",as 在从句中担当成分,修饰先行词 such。如:

We have found **such materials as** are used in their factory. (as 作主语)

我们已找到了像他们工厂里用的那种材料。

(2) as 引导的非限制性定语从句,既可在主句前,又可在主句后,有时还可插入主句中,而 which 引导的非限制性定语从句只能置于主句之后。相同的是两者都可代指主句整个内容,而不是主句中的某一个词。

『典例 3』 _____ is often the case, we have worked out the production plan.

- A. Which B. When C. What D. As

『解析』 D. as 引导非限制性定语从句可以位于句首,指代后面的情况;which 也可指代整个句子,但不可放在句首。

(3) 当从句和主句语意一致时,用 as;反之用 which。如:

She has married again, **as** we expected. 她又结婚了,这是预料之中的事。(语意一致)

She has married again, **which** was unexpected. 她又结婚了,这是出乎预料的事。(语意不一致)

(4) 当 as 在从句中作主语时,后面常接行为动词的被动语态。如 be known, be said, be reported, be announced 等。如果从句中行为动词是主动语态,一般用 which 作主语。如:

She has been late again, **as** was expected. 她又迟到了,这在预料之中。



(5) as 常用在 as (it) seems likely , as (it) often happens , as (it) was pointed out , as (it) was said earlier , as I remember (it) , as I understand (it) , as (it) appears 等结构中。如：

Jack has won the first prize , **as** (it) often happens. 像往常一样 , 杰克得了一等奖。

(6) 当非限制性定语从句的谓语是一个复合结构时 , 只用 which 引导定语从句。如：

Betty always tells a lie , **which** her parents find strange. 贝蒂老是说谎 , 她父母觉得这很奇怪。



强化闯关

- The humans are destroying nature day by day , _____ of course , will cause severe punishment from it sooner or later.
A. who B. when C. on which D. which
- A war is so cruel that it always causes great losses , _____ has happened in Iraq and other countries.
A. what B. which C. as D. one
- The time is not far away _____ modern communications will become widespread in China 's vast countryside.
A. as B. when C. until D. before
- Next winter , _____ you will spend in Harbin , I 'm sure , will be another exciting holiday.
A. which B. when C. in which D. what
- Mrs. Black took the police back to _____ place _____ she witnessed the robbery.
A. the same ; as B. the same ; where
C. the same ; that D. as the same ; as
- Some pictures of the river brought the days back to the old _____ they swam in it.
A. when B. that C. who D. where
- There are several research centers in China _____ a certain disease called Bird Flu is being studied.
A. which B. where C. when D. what
- Was it in 1930 _____ the famous scientist came to Shanghai , _____ he grew up ?
A. when ; where B. that ; where C. when ; that D. that ; that
- Not far from the club , there was a garden , _____ owner was seated in it playing bridge with his children every afternoon.
A. its B. whose C. which D. of which
- The artist _____ the judge gave a prize is the teacher _____ I have been taught painting for over three years.
A. from whom ; by whom B. to whom ; who



that 的定语从句。

14. C. 先行词同时为人和物时,用 that 引导定语从句。

15. B. 定语从句中的主谓宾成分齐全,而先行词 reason 后用 why 引导从句,在从句中作状语,表示".....的原因是....."。

专题十一 名词性从句



考点聚焦

名词性从句侧重考查学生在一定的语言环境中对该类从句的语序、从句连接词的运用以及主从句时态的呼应等知识点的掌握。

1. 名词性从句是一种具有名词功能的非独立分句。名词性从句有三种从句结构:

- ★以 that 引导的从句;
- ★以 wh-疑问词引导的 wh-疑问从句;
- ★以 what 或 wh-ever 等关系代词引导的名词性关系从句。

下面表格中√号表示这三种从句结构能充当的句子成分:

	主语 从句	宾语从句		表语 从句	宾语补 足语	形容词 宾语	同位语 从句
		直接宾语	间接宾语				
that 从句	√	√		√		√	√
wh-疑问从句	√	√		√		√	√
名词性从句	√	√	√	√	√		√

2. 名词性从句的引导词很多,归纳起来可分为以下三类:

★从属连词。只起连接作用,不充当从句中的任何成分,如 that, whether, if。

★连接代词。既起连接作用,本身又作从句中的主语、宾语、表语或定语,如: who, whom, whose, which, what。

★连接副词。既起连接作用,本身又作从句的状语,如: when, where, how, why。



重点突破



重点 1 主语从句

主语从句中引导词的正确使用是考查的热点问题。

1. 考查 that, whether, what。

(1) that 引导主语从句时,只起连接句子的作用,本身没有词义,在从句中也不作句子成分,但通常不能省略。

(2) whether 引导主语从句时,表示主语从句意义的不确定性,在从句中不作句子成分,但有词义,作“是否”讲。一般来说,已经确定的事情常由 that 引导,没有确定的



事情常由 whether 引导。

(3) what 引导主语从句时,意为"……的事物"相当于 the thing(s) that。

『典例 1』 _____ makes this shop different is that it offers more personal services.

(06 年辽宁卷)

- A. What B. Who C. Whatever D. Whoever

『解析』 A。分析句子结构可以看出,从句中缺少主语,用 what 引导主语从句符合句意。

2. 考查 **whatever, whoever, whichever, whomever**。

这些词在从句中不含疑问意义,它们引导主语从句时,whoever = the person who 或 anyone who; whatever = anything that; whichever 意为"无论哪一个"。

『典例 2』 _____ team wins on Saturday will go through to the national championships. (06 年山东卷)

- A. No matter what B. No matter which
C. Whatever D. Whichever

『解析』 D。whichever 可用于名词前,引导主语从句,表示"无论其中任何一个……"。

3. 考查 **where, when, how, why, wherever** 以及 **how many / how much / how far / how long / how soon** 等。

这些词或词组本身有词义,并在从句中作状语。如:

How they will solve the serious problem has not been decided. 他们将怎样解决这个问题严重的问题还没有决定。



重点 2 宾语从句

宾语从句主要考查引导词的选用、语序以及主从句时态的一致性。

『典例 1』 We haven't settled the question of _____ it is necessary for him to study abroad. (06 年江苏卷)

- A. if B. where C. whether D. that

『解析』 C。该题考查介词后的宾语从句。根据句意可知,宾语从句表示疑问,排除 B、D 选项;介词后的宾语从句不可用 if 引导,故 C 项正确。

『典例 2』 These shoes look very good. I wonder _____. (06 年上海春季卷)

- A. how much cost they are B. how much do they cost
C. how much they cost D. how much are they cost

『解析』 C。宾语从句应用陈述句的语序。故选 C。

『典例 3』 —Could you do me a favour? (06 年北京卷)

—It depends on _____ it is.

- A. which B. whichever C. what D. whatever

『解析』 C。根据句意"那要看是什么事了",用 what 引导宾语从句。





重点3 表语从句

表语从句主要考查引导词 that, whether, as if, as though, why 等的选用。

『典例1』 See the flags on top of the building? That was _____ we did this morning. (06年全国卷I)

- A. when B. which C. where D. what

『解析』 D. what 引导表语从句,在表语从句中作 did 的宾语。

『典例2』 Engines are to machines _____ hearts are to animals. (06年山东卷)

- A. as B. that C. what D. which

『解析』 C. 该题的句型是 be sth. to sb. "对某人的重要性"。空格后应是表语从句,在表语从句中又缺少表语,所以用 what。句意是"发动机对机器的重要性就如同心脏对动物的重要性一样"。

『典例3』 _____ she couldn't understand was _____ fewer and fewer students showed interest in her lessons.

- A. What ; why B. That ; what
C. What ; because D. Why ; that

『解析』 A. that, why 和 because 都可引导表语从句。表示原因的名词或从句作句子主语时,其后的表语从句常用 that 引导,而不能用 because,由此可排除 C 项。该题中,第一空应该用 what,引导主语从句,在从句中作宾语,故可排除 B、D 两项,正确答案是 A。(本题后一空也可用 that)



重点4 同位语从句

同位语从句一般位于某些抽象名词之后,如 fact, hope, desire, thought, suggestion, idea, news, problem 等,对这些名词起补充作用。连词 that 只起引导作用,在从句中不作任何成分,不能省略;另外也可用 where, when, how 等词引导。

『典例1』 A warm thought suddenly came to me _____ I might use the pocket money to buy some flowers for my mother's birthday. (06年安徽卷)

- A. if B. when C. that D. which

『解析』 C. 该题考查同位语从句。同位语从句有时不紧跟在它所说明的名词后面,而是被别的词隔开。在本题中,that 引导的同位语从句是对名词 thought 的补充说明,that 在从句中不作任何成分。

『典例2』 Doris' success lies in the fact _____ she is co-operative and eager to learn from others. (06年上海春季卷)

- A. which B. that C. when D. why

『解析』 B. 从句中不缺少任何成分,所以应该用 that 引导同位语从句,说明 fact 的内容。



8. —Does it matter much _____ the sales manager won't attend the meeting tomorrow?
—I've no idea.
A. if B. what C. when D. that
9. _____ seems strange to us is _____ the troublesome boy is getting along well with all his teachers.
A. It ; that B. What ; how C. It ; how D. What ; that
10. _____ words I use can not express my appreciation of your timely help.
A. Whatever B. How many C. No matter what D. Whichever
11. Human beings are different from animals _____ they can use language as a tool to communicate.
A. in that B. for that C. in which D. for which
12. _____ sometimes keeps her awake at night _____ Tom is getting more and more quiet (郁郁寡欢) at home.
A. That ; which B. It ; that C. Whether ; what D. What ; that
13. —I rang you at about nine , but there was no reply.
—Oh , that was probably _____ I was seeing the doctor.
A. why B. when C. what D. that
14. His mother did _____ she could _____ the boy.
A. what ; help B. that ; help C. what ; to help D. that ; to help
15. The reason why they were always poor was _____ they paid little attention to education.
A. / B. because C. that D. whether

 答案与解析

1. D. 考查由 that 引导的同位语从句。在本题中 ,that 引导同位语从句 ,说明 statement 的内容。
2. C. 此题考查 what 引导的主语从句的用法。在从句中 what 作动词 fear 的宾语。
3. B. 此题考查同位语从句和表语从句的连接词的运用。同位语从句和表语从句中的连接词 that 虽然没有任何意义 ,也不充当任何成分 ,但一般不能省略。
4. D. 此题考查表语从句。从句中缺少表语 ,所以排除 A、B 选项 ;which 表示选择 ,不合题意 ;what 在从句中作表语。
5. B. 此题考查同位语从句。这个从句是用 how 引导的强调句式 ,用陈述句语序。
6. B. 此题的难度在于这是个间隔式同位语从句 ,先行词 information 与 that 引导的同位语从句分开了 ,我们容易错把同位语从句当作状语从句。
7. B. 名词性从句应用陈述句的语序 ,排除 A、D ;主从句的时态要一致 ,主句是一般过去时 ,宾语从句要用过去的时态 ,排除 C。
8. D. 此题考查主语从句。it 只是形式主语 ,从句才是真正的主语。由于从句中不缺

名词性从句

少任何成分 故应用 that 作引导词。

9. D. 此题是一个含有两个从句的主从复合句。前一个是由 what 引导的主语从句, what 在从句中作主语;后一个是表语从句,由于从句中成分齐全,故由 that 引导。
10. A. whatever 既可引导名词性从句,也可引导让步状语从句;no matter what 不可引导名词性从句,只能引导让步状语从句;本句用 whatever 引导主语从句。
11. A. 此题考查宾语从句。A be different from B in... "A 与 B 在某方面不同",由于从句中不缺成分,故用 that 引导宾语从句,作介词 in 的宾语。
12. B. 考查主语从句。it 作形式主语,真正的主语是 that 引导的从句。
13. B. 根据语境,应用 when 引导表语从句,在表语从句中作时间状语。
14. C. did 之后接 what 引导的从句作 did 的宾语;she could (do) 省略了 do,在从句中 what 作 do 的宾语,后面的不定式作目的状语。
15. C. 在 reason 作主语时,其表语从句只能用 that 引导,而不能用 because 引导。

专题十二 状语从句



考点聚焦

状语从句是每年高考单项选择部分必考的项目之一。考查的重点仍然是容易混淆的近似连词的用法。纵观近几年高考题我们不难看出,试题的结构越来越复杂,设问的角度也越来越多样化,呈现出交叉和综合的特点。



重点突破



重点1 时间状语从句

1. as, while, when 三个词在引导时间状语从句时,有如下异同:

(1) as 强调主从句的动作同时发生,译为"一面……一面……"(通常能被 when 代替,但 as 更强调 at the same time);as 表示"随着……",常指一个行为是另一个行为的结果,或一种状态随另一种状态变化(不能同 when 互换)。

(2) when 既可以表示时间段(可以与 while 互换),也可以表示瞬间(不能与 while 互换)。

注意:★当表示瞬间时,从句的动作可以与主句的动作同时发生(可用 as 替换),也可以先于主句的动作发生(不可用 as 代替)。

★when 可作连词用,相当于 and then,前一分句多用进行时,常与 be about to 或 be on the point of doing 连用。

(3) while 只指时间段,从句的动作必须是延续性的,用 while 时,从句的动作或者与主句的动作同时发生,或者强调主句的动作在从句的动作进行或持续过程中的某一时刻发生了(这时可用 when 和 as 代替)。

注意:从句的谓语动词如表示状态时,通常用 while。

『典例1』 He was about halfway through his meal _____ a familiar voice came to his ears. (06年辽宁卷)

- A. why B. where C. when D. while

『解析』 C。when 在此引导时间状语从句,意为“正在……时,突然……”,句意为“他正在吃饭时,突然一个熟悉的声音传到他耳中”。

『典例2』 I had just stepped out of the bathroom and was busily drying myself with a towel _____ I heard the steps. (06年湖南卷)

- A. while B. when C. since D. after

『解析』 B。when 表示“就在那个时候”,强调动作同时发生。句意为“我刚走出浴室,正用毛巾擦干身体,这时我听到脚步声”。

2. the moment, the second, the minute, the time, the month/week... , immediately, directly, instantly 都可引导时间状语从句,相当于 as soon as。

『典例3』 —Did you remember to give Mary the money you owed her?

—Yes, I gave it to her _____ I saw her.

- A. while B. the moment
C. suddenly D. once

『解析』 B。在该题的四个备选项中,while 不可与短暂性动词连用;suddenly 不可引导从句;once 表示“一旦……”,不合题意。所以正确答案是 B,意为“一……(就……)”。

3. before 和 since 都可引导时间状语从句。其区别是:

(1)若表达“还未……就……”,“不到……就……”,“……才……”,“趁还没来得及”时,需用 before。before 引导的从句中谓语动词不用否定式。

(2)It will be + 时间段 + before... 意为“多久之后才……”。

(3)since 从句的谓语动词一般是短暂性的,主句的谓语动词是延续性的或者动作是反复发生的,若 since 从句的时态是一般过去时,主句的时态应是现在完成时或现在完成进行时。

(4)在“It is + 时间段 + since...”中,时间的计算一律从 since 从句的动作完成或状态结束时算起。

『典例4』 —Why didn't you tell him about the meeting? (06年四川卷)

—He rushed out of the room _____ I could say a word.

- A. before B. until C. when D. after

『解析』 A。根据问句“你为什么没有告诉他那个会议呢”可知,选 before 符合答语语意“我还没有说上话他就跑出房间了”。

『典例5』 It is almost five years _____ we saw each other last time.

- A. before B. since C. after D. when

『解析』 B。It is + 时间段 + since... 为固定句型,意为“自从……到现在已有……时间了”。



4. **whenever** 可以引导时间状语从句,意为"无论什么时候(= **no matter when**)"。

『典例 6』 You can eat food free in my restaurant _____ you like.

- A. whenever B. wherever C. whatever D. however

『解析』 A. 根据题意空格处应填入一词引导时间状语从句。所以正确答案为 A。C 项不正确的原因是 **whatever** 同题干中的 **food** 意义重合。

5. **till, until** 用于肯定句时,主句谓语动词必须是延续性动词,指从开始一直到某时结束,表示"直到……";用于否定句时,指直到某时某动作"才开始",其谓语动词一般是终止性的。

『典例 7』 Simon thought his computer was broken _____ his little brother pointed out that he had forgotten to turn it on.

- A. until B. unless C. after D. because

『解析』 A. **until** 用于肯定句,主句谓语动词是延续性的,表示"某一动作一直延续至某时间才停止"。其他选项不合题意。

6. **once** 引导时间状语从句,带有条件意味,意思是"一旦……"。

『典例 8』 _____ environmental damage is done, it takes many years for the ecosystem(生态系统) to recover. (06 年江苏卷)

- A. Even if B. If only C. While D. Once

『解析』 D. **once**"一旦……"引导时间状语从句,符合句意。



重点 2 让步状语从句

1. **as** 引导让步状语从句,意为"尽管,虽然,即使",要将作表语的形容词、名词或作状语的副词置于句首,且名词前不用任何冠词,有时还可将动词提前。

『典例 1』 _____, Carolina couldn't get the door open.

- A. Try as she might B. As she might try
C. She might as try D. Might she as try

『解析』 A. **as** 引导让步状语从句,动词需提前。

『典例 2』 _____, he talks a lot about his favorite singers after class.

- A. A quiet student as he may be B. Quiet student as he may be
C. Be a quiet student as he may D. Quiet as he may be a student

『解析』 B. **as** 引导让步状语从句,作表语的名词提前时不用任何冠词。

2. **even if/though** 引导让步状语从句,意为"即使,尽管",通常使用两种语气:假设语气和虚拟语气,其主句不能用 **but** 或 **yet**。

『典例 3』 Allow children the space to voice their opinions, _____ they are different from your own.

- A. until B. even if C. unless D. as though

『解析』 B. **even if** 引导让步状语从句,符合题意"即使孩子们的意见与你的不一致,也要允许他们发表自己的意见"。**until**"直到……才";**unless**"除非";**as though**



"好像" 均不合题意。

3. **though** 和 **although** 用作连词引导让步状语从句时,可以互换。不同的是:**though** 还可作副词单独置于句末,作"但是,不过"讲;**although** 则不行。另外 **while** 也可引导让步状语从句。

『典例 4』 _____ he has limited technical knowledge, the old worker has a lot of experience. (06 年全国卷 I)

- A. Since B. Unless C. As D. Although

『解析』 D。although 引导让步状语从句,符合题意"虽然这位老工人的专业知识有限,但他有许多经验"。

『典例 5』 _____ modeling business is by no means easy to get into, the good models will always be in demand.

- A. While B. Since C. As D. If

『解析』 A。while 可以引导让步状语从句,相当于 although,但只能位于主句之前,不能放在句尾。其他选项不合句意"尽管踏入模特行业并非易事,但是对优秀模特儿的需求量一直是很大的"。

4. **no matter**"不论,不顾",为从属连词,引导让步状语从句,后面必须与 **how**, **what**, **when**, **where**, **whether** 等连用,相当于 **however**, **whatever**, **whenever** 等。

『典例 6』 In peace, too, the Red Cross is expected to send help _____ there is human suffering. (06 年江西卷)

- A. whoever B. however C. whatever D. wherever

『解析』 D。wherever 引导让步状语从句,意为"无论哪里发生人类灾难"。

『典例 7』 This is a very interesting book. I'll buy it, _____. (06 年陕西卷)

- A. how much may it cost B. no matter how it may cost
C. however much it may cost D. how may it cost

『解析』 C。句意为"无论书有多贵,我都买",no matter how 或 however 强调 much,所以 C 项符合,也可以用 no matter how much it may cost。

5. **when** 可以引导让步状语从句,相当于 **even though**,意为"既然,虽然,然而"。

『典例 8』 How can you expect to learn anything _____ you never listen? (06 年山东卷)

- A. in case B. even if C. unless D. when

『解析』 D。when 意为"既然",引导让步状语从句,符合题意"既然你从来不听,你怎么能指望学到东西"。



重点 3 条件状语从句

引导条件状语从句的从属连词有 **if**, **as (so)** long as, **on condition that**, **unless**, **in case**, **provided/providing that** 等。

『典例 1』 We won't keep winning games _____ we keep playing well. (06 年浙江卷)



- A. because B. unless C. when D. while

『解析』 B。根据句意“我们不会一直赢得比赛,除非我们打得很好”,应用 unless 引导条件状语从句。

『典例 2』 In time of serious accidents, _____ we know some basic things about first aid, we can save lives. (06 年重庆卷)

- A. whether B. until C. if D. unless

『解析』 C。if 引导条件状语从句,符合题意“在发生严重事故的时候,如果我们懂得一些基本的急救知识,我们就可以挽救生命”。



重点 4 地点、原因状语从句

1. 引导地点状语从句主要用 **where**。

『典例 1』 If you are traveling _____ the customs are really foreign to your own, please do as the Romans do. (06 年天津卷)

- A. in which B. what C. when D. where

『解析』 D。空格后的从句不缺主语或宾语,所以排除 A、B 项;D 项 where 引导地点状语从句,符合题意“如果你在一个风俗完全不同的地方旅行,请入乡随俗”。

『典例 2』 —Mom, what did your doctor say?

—He advised me to live _____ the air is fresher. (06 年四川卷)

- A. in where B. in which
C. the place where D. where

『解析』 D。live 是不及物动词,后可接表示地点的状语,因此选用 where 引导地点状语从句,若把 C 项改为 in the place where, where 引导的就是定语从句,这时也正确。

2. 引导原因状语从句的连词有 **because, for, since, as, now that, seeing that** 等。

『典例 3』 He found it increasingly difficult to read, _____ his eyesight was beginning to fail. (06 年北京卷)

- A. and B. for C. but D. or

『解析』 B。for 引导原因状语从句,说明他阅读越来越困难的原因。



难点解疑



难点 1 目的、结果状语从句

1. 引导目的状语从句的连词有 **so that, in case, lest, for fear that, in order that** 等。

(1) so that 为从属连词,引导目的或结果状语从句,从句中有 can, may, might, should 等情态动词时,往往表示虚拟语气;若从句用过去时,则谓动词前一般用 should, could, would, 在口语中有时可省略 so。

(2) in case, lest, for fear that 都可以引导目的状语从句。lest 和 in case 具有否定



意义,意为"以免,以防",lest 从句常用 should, would, might 等虚拟式,只用于书面语,在日常生活中常以 for fear(that), in case 从句代之(常不用虚拟式)。

(3) in order that 意为"为了,以便",为从属连词,引导目的状语从句,可放在句首或句子的后面。从句中通常带有 could, can, will, would, may, might 等情态动词。

注意:so that 作"为了,以便,结果"讲,引导目的和结果状语从句。它与 in order that 引导目的状语的区别是:

★位置不同。in order that 可放在句首或句后,而 so that 一般只能放在句子的后面。

★情态动词不同。在 in order that 引导的从句中,多用 may, might, 而在 so that 所引导的从句中,多用 can, could。

『典例 1』 I'd like to arrive 20 minutes early _____ I can have time for a cup of tea.

- A. as soon as B. as a result C. in case D. so that

『解析』 D。as soon as "一……就"; as a result "结果"; in case "万一"。so that "为了",表目的,符合句意"我喜欢提前二十分钟到,以便有时间喝茶"。答案为 D。

『典例 2』 I shall stay in the hotel all day _____ there is news for the missing child.

- A. in case B. no matter
C. in any case D. ever since

『解析』 A。在该题中 no matter 不可单独使用来引导从句, in any case 不可引导从句, ever since 引导时间状语从句。所以答案为 A。

2. so... that 和 such... that 引导结果状语从句,意为"如此……以致……"。使用时要注意:

(1) so... that... 与 such... that... 的用法区别:

- ① so + *adj.* / *adv.* + that...
- ② such + *a(n)* + (*adj.*) + *n.*(单数) + that...
- ③ so + many (much/few/little) + (*adj.*) + *n.* + that...
- ④ such + (*adj.*) + *n.*(复数) + that...
- ⑤ such + (*adj.*) + *n.*(不可数) + that...

(2) 从句一般位于主句之后,"so + 形容词"可以提至句首,以示强调,这时主句要倒装。如:

So hard did he work **that** he had caught up with us in a week. 他工作如此努力,以致在一周内赶上我们了。

(3) 在非正式场合下,that 可以省略,有时用逗号隔开主从句,有时连逗号都省略了。如:

We left in such a hurry (,)(**that**) we forgot to lock the door. 我们离开得如此匆忙,以致门都忘了锁。





难点2 比较、方式状语从句

1. **as... as, than, not so... as, the more... the more** 等可以引导比较状语从句, 比较从句部分常是省略句。

『典例1』 _____ I can see, there is only one possible way to keep away from the danger.

- A. As long as B. As far as C. Just as D. Even if

『解析』 B. as/so far as 表示程度或范围, 在否定句中多用 so, 后接从句, 表示“就……”。在此 as far as one can see 意为“就……所能判断”, 为固定结构。

『典例2』 As far as I am concerned, education is about learning and the more you learn, _____.

- A. the more for life are you equipped B. the more equipped for life you are
C. the more life you are equipped for D. you are equipped the more for life

『解析』 B. 根据所提供的语境 the more you learn, 并结合所给的选项可以确定这是“the more... the more...”句型, 表示“越……越……”。句意为: 我认为, 教育是有关学习的事, 你学得越多, 你对生活准备得就越充分。the more equipped for life 意为“对生活准备得越充分”。

2. **as** 可以引导方式状语从句, 在非正式语中, **like** 也可以代替 **as**。另外 **as if/though** 也可引导方式状语从句, 表示与事实情况相反时, 从句的谓语动词用虚拟语气。

『典例3』 Mary was behaving _____ she hadn't grown up.

- A. as B. so that C. though D. as if

『解析』 D. 用 as if 引导方式状语从句, 符合句意“玛丽的表现(给人的感觉)像是她还没有长大”。



强化闯关

- 《**试题调研**》
1. We were just _____ calling you up _____ you came in.
A. about; when B. on the point of; while
C. on the point of; when D. on the point of; as
2. He never thought that his success came _____ he least wanted it.
A. while B. when C. until D. since
- 《**第二辑**》
3. _____ a car reaches the end of its life, it is taken apart and any part that can be reused is sold off.
A. As B. With C. Once D. While
4. Scientists generally agree that Earth's climate will warm up over the next 50 to 100 years _____ it has warmed in the 20,000 years since the Ice Age.
A. so long as B. as much as C. as long as D. as well as
5. You can have the magazine _____ I finish reading it.



- A. in the moment
C. the moment as
- B. the moment
D. in the moment when
6. You may be allowed to watch TV _____ you _____ your homework.
A. even if ; finish
C. in case ; finish
B. on condition that ; have finished
D. in order that ; will finish
7. _____ good use you 've made of your time to study , there 's still room for improvement.
A. Whatever
B. However
C. Though
D. That
8. I was advised to arrange for insurance _____ I needed medical treatment.
A. in case
B. so that
C. although
D. if
9. _____ time went on , our teacher 's words proved true.
A. As
B. While
C. with
D. When
10. _____ I 've got my own car , I don 't get as much exercise as I used to.
A. Even if
B. Except that
C. Now that
D. Now and then
11. We cannot understand disease _____ we understand the person who has the disease.
A. though
B. whether
C. unless
D. otherwise
12. If you want to do the experiment again , you 'd better be more careful _____ you made a mistake.
A. when
B. why
C. where
D. that
13. We are going to discuss the way of reading works _____ it is used for real life purposes , and this should give you a better understanding of it.
A. that
B. which
C. where
D. when
14. Determined to stand up and make a living by herself , Frida began to learn to paint _____ she was limited to bed and wheelchair.
A. because
B. even though
C. unless
D. in case
15. _____ , he managed to finish it in time.
A. The job was hard
B. Hard as was the job
C. Hard as the job was
D. Hard was the job



答案与解析

1. C. 第一空考查 be about to 与 be on the point of 的用法区别 ,由 "calling" 可知应用 be on the point of doing sth. ,可排除 A 项 ;came in 是在某时间点发生的动作 ,故排除 B、D 两项 ,不用 while 和 as ,而用 when 来引导时间状语从句。答案为 B。
2. B. 根据句意 "他从未想到成功在他最不想得到的时候到来了," 应选 when 来引导时间状语从句 ,until 或 since 放在此处意思不妥 ,while 引导的从句的谓语动词必须是延续性动词。
3. C. 综合前后分句可知 ,前句是后句的前提条件 ,所以要用能引导条件从句的引导词 once。
4. B. 这是一个表示同级比较的状语从句 ,因比较的对象是上升的温度 ,所以 B 项

状语从句



最佳。

5. B. the moment 在这里作从属连词,引导时间状语从句,意思是"一……(就……)"相当于 as soon as。
6. B. 根据句意"你被允许看电视的前提条件是先完成作业",所以选 B。
7. A. 此题易误选 B。引导词 whatever 引导状语从句并在此从句中作定语修饰名词 use,而不是修饰形容词 good。只要是"adj. + n."结构,一般都用 what, such 修饰,如 what great progress, such fine students。当然也有例外,如 how many people。
8. A. 根据句意"别人劝我买保险,以防治病之需"可知,所填选项应该表示目的,故先排除 C、D 两项。in case 引导目的状语从句,意为"以防,万一,惟恐",符合题意;so that 也引导目的状语从句,但意为"为了",不合题意。
9. A. as 引导的时间状语从句强调主句和从句的动作都在发展变化,意为"随着……"。
10. C. now that"既然,由于",引导原因状语从句,符合句意。
11. C. unless 引导条件状语从句,意为"除非,如果不"。
12. C. where 引导地点状语从句。本题的意思是"如果你想再次做这个试验的话,最好在你出过错的地方加倍小心"。
13. D. 本题主要考查对句子结构、逻辑关系的理解及引导词的应用。根据句子结构... reading works _____ it is used for real life purposes 作定语修饰前面的 the way,根据他们的逻辑关系,空后面的句子为状语从句,从而排除 A、B,根据前半句句意"我们将要讨论的是,当现实生活需要时,我们应该如何去阅读文学作品"可以确定本题的正确答案是 D。
14. B. 根据句意和前后句的逻辑关系,应用 even though 表示让步关系。
15. C. as 引导让步状语从句,本题中倒装句可转化为"Although the job was hard"。

专题十三 特殊句式



考点聚焦

特殊句式是高考的要点之一,主要考查强调句、祈使句、倒装句、反意疑问句、省略与替代等。



重点突破



重点 1 强调句

强调句的基本结构是 It + is/was + 被强调部分 + that/who/whom + 句子的剩余部分。

被强调的部分可以是单词、短语,也可以是从句,但整个句子的结构必须完整。



真是那样吗?(常用在一个人听了一件事后表示惊讶、怀疑时)

被强调的成分可以是主语、宾语或状语,但不能是定语或谓语。

『典例1』 I just wonder _____ that makes him so excited. (06年山东卷)

- A. why it does B. what he does C. how it is D. what it is

『解析』 D。wonder 后是宾语从句,如果还原为正常句式,就是 what makes him so excited, what 在从句中作主语,所以排除 A、C 项。宾语从句中强调疑问词 what, 所以 B 选项结构错误。句意:我只想知道是什么使他如此兴奋。

『典例2』 David said that it was because of his strong interest in literature _____ he chose the course. (06年上海春季卷)

- A. that B. what C. why D. how

『解析』 A。如果将 said 后的宾语从句还原为正常句式,则为 that he chose the course because of his strong... 宾语从句是个强调句,强调 because of 短语。句意为:大卫说正是因为对文学的浓厚的兴趣,他才选择了这一课程。

『典例3』 It was not until she got home _____ Jennifer realized she had lost her keys. (06年全国卷II)

- A. when B. that C. where D. before

『解析』 B。对否定形式的 until 从句或 until 短语进行强调时,要把否定词 not 放在 until 之前,实际上就是把强调句型变成否定式,即:It is/was not until + 被强调部分 + that + 其他部分。



重点2 反意疑问句

反意疑问部分的主语与时态要和前面陈述部分的主语与时态保持一致,并且要用人称代词(there be 除外);反意疑问部分的否定形式必须缩写,当主语是第一人称,谓语动词是 think, believe, suppose, imagine, expect, guess 等词时,要注意否定转移,同时反意疑问部分要与从句保持一致,如果主语是其他人称,反意疑问部分的主语和时态要与主句保持一致。

注意:be sure 后接从句时,反意疑问部分的主语与时态也要与从句保持一致。

『典例1』 I'm sure you'd rather she went to school by bus, _____? (06年福建卷)

- A. hadn't you B. wouldn't you C. aren't I D. didn't she

『解析』 D。在"I'm sure you'd rather + 宾语从句"中,反意疑问句应与宾语从句的主语与时态保持一致,所以选 D。

『典例2』 We forgot to bring our tickets, but please let us enter, _____. (06年全国卷II)

- A. do you B. can we C. will you D. shall we

『解析』 C。but 后的分句是祈使句。用 let us 构成的祈使句,其反意疑问句用 will you, 而 let's 构成的祈使句,其反意疑问句用 shall we。

『典例3』 There was a loud scream from the backstage immediately after the concert ended, _____?

- A. wasn't there B. was there C. didn't it D. did it



『解析』 A。当陈述部分是主从复合句时,反意疑问部分与主句保持一致。本题中,主句部分为"there be"句型的肯定式,所以反意疑问部分用 wasn't there。

『典例 4』 There is no light in the dormitory. They must have gone to the lecture, _____?

- A. didn't they B. don't they C. mustn't they D. haven't they

『解析』 D。若陈述部分含有的 must 表示推测,则反意疑问句的形式一般参照时间状语确定。此处隐含的时间状语(他们肯定)已经(去听报告了),因为"现在寝室的灯还没亮",强调现在,所以用完成时。



重点 3 祈使句、感叹句

1. 祈使句的构成以及"祈使句 + and/or/then + 陈述句"句型

『典例 1』 Mary, _____ here — everybody else, stay where you are. (06 年全国卷 I)

- A. come B. comes C. to come D. coming

『解析』 A。该题中 Mary 和 everybody else 分别与后面的动词部分用逗号隔开,说明是两个"呼语"。根据后半句的语意,可以看出该题是一个祈使句。

『典例 2』 Start out right away, _____ you'll miss the first train. (06 年四川卷)

- A. and B. but C. or D. while

『解析』 C。该题是"祈使句 + or + 从句"句型。意为"马上出发,否则你就会错过第一班火车"。

『典例 3』 _____ and I'll get the work finished. (06 年重庆卷)

- A. Have one more hour B. One more hour
C. Given one more hour D. If I have one more hour

『解析』 B。and 前面的祈使句有时可用一个名词性短语代替。将该题补充完整是"Give me one more hour and I'll get the work finished"。

2. 感叹句的引导词由 what 和 how 构成

(1) 在 what 构成的感叹句中,what 修饰的中心词是名词,其结构是:

- ① What a/an + (adj.) + 可数名词单数 + (主语 + 谓语)
② What + (adj.) + 可数名词复数 + (主语 + 谓语)
③ What + (adj.) + 不可数名词 + (主语 + 谓语)

(2) 在 how 构成的感叹句中,how 修饰的中心词是形容词或副词,其结构是:

- ① How + 主语 + 谓语(省略了形容词或副词)
② How + adj. + a/an + 可数名词单数 + 主语 + 谓语
③ How + adj./adv. + 主语 + 谓语

『典例 4』 Oh, John. _____ you gave us!

- A. How a pleasant surprise B. How pleasant surprise
C. What a pleasant surprise D. What pleasant surprise

『解析』 C。在本题中主语 you 之前有名词 surprise,所以要用 what 构成感叹句,

排除 A、B 项，surprise 本是不可数名词，但此句中包含 give sb. a surprise 这一短语，在构成感叹句时，不定冠词 a 不能丢。故正确答案为 C。



难点解疑



难点 1 倒装句

倒装主要有两种形式：全部倒装，即把整个谓语部分放在主语之前；部分倒装，即把助动词或情态动词置于主语之前。

『典例 1』 _____ homework did we have to do that we had no time to take a rest. (06 年福建卷)

- A. So much B. Too much C. Too little D. So little

『解析』 A。在 so... that... 结构中，如果 so 置于句首，通常需要倒装。

『典例 2』 At the foot of the mountain _____. (06 年四川卷)

- A. a village lie B. lies a village
C. does a village lie D. lying a village

『解析』 B。当谓语动词是 sit, lie, stand 等不及物动词，而且地点状语提至句首时，或当主系表结构中的表语提前时，都要倒装。另外当句首是 here, there, now, then, away, in, up, down, off, often, always, out, back, over 等表示方式或方向的副词，而谓语动词是 rush, run, come, fly, exist, go 等不及物动词时，用全部倒装结构，此时的谓语动词不需要助动词。

『典例 3』 I've tried very hard to improve my English. But by no means _____ with my progress. (06 年重庆卷)

- A. the teacher is not satisfied B. is the teacher not satisfied
C. the teacher is satisfied D. is the teacher satisfied

『解析』 D。否定或半否定意义的副词或连词置于句首时，句子要部分倒装，常见的有 never, hardly, seldom, little, not, not only, not until, nowhere, no sooner... than, in no way(决不), in no time(立刻), in no case, by no means 等。



难点 2 省略与替代

省略与替代是近年来高考试题考查的重要内容。现对高考所涉及到的考点进行归纳。

『典例 1』 _____ with the size of the whole earth, the biggest ocean does not seem big at all.

- A. Compare B. When comparing
C. Comparing D. When compared

『解析』 D。当状语从句的主语和主句的主语一致时，可以省略状语从句中的主语和系动词 be，这时从句中可出现如下结构：①as/as if/once + 名词；②though/whether/when + 形容词；③whether/as if/while + 介词短语；④when/while/though +



现在分词 ;⑤ when/if/even if/unless/once/until/than/as + 过去分词 ;⑥ as if/as though + 不定式。

〔典例 2〕 —Mr. Gordon asked me to remind you of the meeting this afternoon. Don't you forget it!

—OK, I _____. (06 年重庆卷)

A. won't B. don't C. will D. do

〔解析〕 A. 对于祈使句, 简略回答常用 I will 表示"乐于去做某事";用 I won't 许诺"将不会发生某事"。

〔典例 3〕 —Will you be able to finish your report today?

—_____ . (06 年全国卷 II)

A. I like it B. I hope so
C. I'll do so D. I'd love it

〔解析〕 B. 在 I'm afraid, I believe, I expect, I think, I hope, I suppose 等之后的 so 相当于一个肯定的宾语从句, not 相当于一个否定的宾语从句(但 think 常用 I don't think so)。这种用法常见的还有 how so, why so, is that so, he said so 等。

〔典例 4〕 —I reminded you not to forget the appointment.

—_____ . (06 年江西卷)

A. So you did B. So I do not C. So did you D. So do I

〔解析〕 A. do, did, does 可以代替前面的动词, 以避免重复。do 常与 so 等组成复合替代形式: ①"so + 主语 + be/助动词/情态动词"。表示对上一句的肯定或赞同, 意为"的确如此", 上下文的主语是相同的人或物。②"so + be/助动词/情态动词 + 主语"。表示该主语与上一句的动作一致, "……也一样"。

〔典例 5〕 —Michael was late for Mr. Smith's oral class this morning.

—_____ ? As far as I know, he never came late to class. (06 年江西卷)

A. How come B. So what C. Why not D. What for

〔解析〕 A. 在特殊疑问句中, 为了避免信息的重复, 在回答时往往省略重复的信息, 只保留新的信息。A 项符合该题语境"他怎么会迟到呢? 据我所知, 他上课从不迟到"。How come = How did it happen that he was late.

〔典例 6〕 —I was wondering if we could go skating on the weekend.

—_____ good. (06 年湖北卷)

A. Sound B. Sounded C. Sounding D. Sounds

〔解析〕 D. 在陈述自己的意见或在感叹句中都可以省略与前面相同的成分。该句的答语省略了主语" That"。



强化闯关

1. Be tough-minded, but tender-hearted, _____ ?

A. will you B. isn't it C. aren't you D. are you



A. where ; where

B. where ; that

C. there ; where

D. that ; where

15. It was _____ she finished her composition.

A. until last week that

B. not until last week that

C. until last week when

D. not until last week when



答案与解析

1. A. 祈使句的反意疑问句是 will/won 't you。该句的意思是 :意志刚强 ,但心地善良 ,你能做到吗 ?
2. A. "How + *adj.* + a/an + 单数可数名词 +(主语 + 谓语)" 是感叹句的基本句型之一。
3. D. 当陈述部分的谓语动词为表示愿望的 wish 时 ,在反意疑问句中用 may。
4. D. 本题考查了 "祈使句 + and/or/then + 陈述句" 句型。在这里祈使句相当于一个条件句 ,用一个名词短语表示 ,即 "a bit more efforts"。
5. C. 该题同时考查了省略以及 another 与 the other 之间的区别。由于该句为由 and 连接的并列句 ,为了避免与前面分句的重复 ,后面的分句省略了 should be painted 而换用 is。另外 ,因为一块板有两面 ,另一面应称作 "the other"。
6. D. 此处实际上是 "once it is begun" 的省略形式。A 项缺少主语 ;B、C 两项都为现在分词的主动形式 ,句子结构错误 ,故排除。
7. D. 英语中为了避免重复 ,可用 so 来代替某些动词后面的宾语从句。这些动词常用的有 think , believe , hope , expect , suppose , imagine , guess , say , do 以及短语 be afraid 等。其否定形式有两种 :动词的否定结构 ,not 代替 so。
8. C. 电话里有人找用 be wanted ;Coming 是 I 'm coming 的省略形式。
9. B. 当不定式后面是 be + *adj.* / *n.* 时 ,往往省略形容词或名词 ,但 be 不可省略。
10. D. hardly 位于句首 ,句子要倒装 ,根据句意可知 "get to the bus stop" 发生在 "pull away" 之前 ,表示过去的过去 ,故用过去完成时。
11. B. 以 so 开头的句子 ,表示前面一句话所说明的情况也适用于说明另一个人或另一种情况时 ,so 引导的句子要求部分倒装 ,但是 ,以 so 开头的句子 ,如果只是重复前面一句话的意思 ,表示对别人所说的情况加以肯定 ,强调情况确实如此 ,则语序不能倒装。本题考查的正是 so 的这两种用法。
12. C. and 后的并列分句中 ,否定副词 seldom 置于句首 ,后一分句要倒装。
13. B. 该题是强调句型 ,强调 because 引导的原因状语从句。
14. B. 此题考查强调句式的变化。该句还原后为 "Now I study (in the school) where my mother taught (before)" ,说明该题是强调句型 ,强调从句 "where my mother taught" ,故答案为 B。
15. B. 这是 not until 的固定强调句式。



专题十四 情景交际



考点聚焦

交际用语在历年高考试题中为必考内容,每年都有1—2题,主要以单项选择形式出现,命题者通过设置特定的语言环境来考查考生的日常交际能力。考点主要集中在:互相介绍、打电话、表达欣赏之情、征询意见、看法、猜测和劝说等。



重点突破



重点1 打电话的常用语

1. 打/接电话的常用语:

Hello! Is Tom in? 喂,汤姆在家吗?

May/Could I speak to...? 请让.....接电话,好吗?

Is that...(speaking)? 你是.....吗?

Hello, this is... speaking. 喂,我是.....

2. 请人等候的常用语:

Just a moment, please. 请等一会儿。

Hold on, please. 请别挂断电话。

3. 被找人此时不在的常用语:

Sorry, but he/she isn't here right now. 对不起,他/她现在不在。

4. 请对方留言的常用语:

Can I take a message for you? 我能为你带个口信吗?

Would you please leave a message? 请留个言,好吗?

『典例』 —Can I speak to Mr. Wang, please?

—_____

A. Who are you? B. I'm Wang. C. Speaking. D. Are you John?

『解析』 C. speaking 意为“我就是”,其他选项不符合英语国家打电话的习惯。



重点2 提供帮助和应答的常用语

1. 提供帮助的常用语:

Can/Could/Shall I help you? 我能帮助你吗?

What can I do for you? 我能为你做什么吗?

Would you like me to...? 你要我.....吗?

Is there anything(else) I can do for you?(还)有什么事我可以为你做的吗?

Let me do...(for you). 让我帮你做.....吧。

Let me give you a hand. 让我帮你吧。

You are a great help.



2. 接受帮助的应答语:

Thanks. That would be nice/fine. 谢谢,太好了。

That 's very kind of you. 你真是太好了。

Thank you for your help. 谢谢你的帮助。

Yes ,please. 好的,请帮忙。

3. 谢绝帮助的应答语:

No ,thanks. 不用了,谢谢你。

No ,thanks. I can manage it myself. 不了,谢谢你,我自己能行。

Thank you all the same. 还是要谢谢你。

That 's very kind of you ,but... 谢谢,可是.....

『典例 1』 —How are you getting on with your cleaning ?Do you need my help ?

— _____ ,but I think I 'm all right.(06 年安徽卷)

A. No ,thanks

B. That 's OK

C. You are helpful

D. That 's very kind of you

『解析』 D。从答语 but I think I 'm all right 可以看出答话人谢绝了对方的帮助。如果用 A 则答语的前半句和后半句均表示拒绝,无需再用"but"来表示转折。正确答案为 D,意为"你真是太好了,但是我想我能行"。

『典例 2』 —Would you like some more soup ?

— _____. It is delicious ,but I 've had enough.(06 年重庆卷)

A. Yes ,please

B. No ,thank you

C. Nothing more

D. I 'd like some

『解析』 B。从最后一句可以看出这里是拒绝别人的帮助,应用"No ,thank you"。



重点 3 感谢和应答的常用语

1. 表示感谢的常用语:

Thank you (very much). 非常感谢。

Thanks a lot. /Many thanks. 多谢了。

Thanks for... 多谢.....

2. 应答用语:

It 's very kind/nice of you to say so. 你真是太客气了。

Not at all. /That 's all right. /You 're welcome. /Don 't mention it. 不用谢/ 请不必客气。

My pleasure. 不用谢/乐意效劳。

『典例』 —Thank you so much for the book you sent me.

— _____.

A. No thanks

B. I 'm glad you like it

C. Please don 't say so

D. No ,it 's not so good

『解析』 B。根据英美国家的习惯,对别人赠送的礼物,不论轻重,都要表示感



谢 表达自己的愉快心情。回答时 要用"我非常高兴你喜欢它(指礼物)"来表达。



重点4 祝愿、祝贺和应答语的常用

1. 表示祝愿的常用语:

Good luck (to you)! 祝你好运!

I wish you good luck/success! 祝你好运(成功)!

Good journey (to you)!/Have a good trip! 祝你旅途愉快!

Have a nice/ good time! 祝你玩得愉快!

All the best! 祝你万事如意!

My best wishes to you! 向你致以最美好的祝愿!

Wish you every success at your new post! 祝你在新的一岗位上一切顺利!

2. 表示祝贺的常用语:

I'd like to congratulate you on... 祝贺你.....

Congratulations! 祝贺你!

Congratulations on your success! 祝贺你成功!

3. 常用的应答语:

Thank you. 谢谢。

The same to you. 你也如此。

『典例』 Tom: Mike, our team will play against the Rockets this weekend. I'm sure we will win.

Mike: _____!

A. Congratulations B. Cheers C. Best wishes D. Good luck

『解析』 D. Tom 说本周末将和火箭队比赛并且有把握赢,于是 Mike 祝他好运, D 项符合要求; A 项是取得好成绩后表示祝贺; B 项是举杯或敬酒时的用语; C 项是写信结尾时的祝福语。



重点5 请求、允许与应答的常用语

1. 请求允许的常用语:

May I...? 我可以.....吗?

Can/Could I...? 我能.....吗?

I wonder if I could... 我不知道我能否.....

Would/Do you mind if I open the window? 我打开窗户可以吗?

(注意答语:"同意打开"要用" No "或" Not at all./Of course not./Certainly not./No, go ahead./No, please do"等表示不介意;"不同意打开"要用" Yes "表示介意。)

2. 允许时的应答语:

Yes./Sure./Certainly. 当然可以。

Yes, (do) please. 是的,请吧。

Go ahead, please. 请吧。

I couldn't be more sure.



That 's OK/all right. 好的。

You can take that ,if you like. 如果你喜欢的话就拿起吧。

Take it ,by all means. 拿起吧 ,完全没有问题。

3. 不允许时的应答语:

I 'm sorry you can 't. 很抱歉 ,不行。

I 'm sorry ,but that 's not possible. 对不起 ,但这是不可能的。

You 'd better not. 你最好不(这样)。

I 'm sorry ,it 's not allowed. 很抱歉 ,这不允许。

Sorry ,it 's out of order. 很抱歉 ,它坏了。

Yes ,I do. 是的 ,我介意。

『 典例 』 —Excuse me ,can you tell me where the nearest bank is ,please ?

—_____ Oh yes !It 's past the post office ,next to a big market.(06 年全国卷 I)

A. Mm ,let me think.

B. Oh ,I beg your pardon ?

C. You 're welcome.

D. What do you mean ?

『 解析 』 A. 问句是请求帮助 ,回答时应表明自己的态度 ,而 B 项是在没有听清对方的话时的用语 ;C 项是回答别人表示感谢时的用语 ;D 项是询问对方是什么意思。只有 A 项符合语境。



难点解疑



难点 1 劝告和建议的常用语

1. 表示劝告的常用语:

You 'd better (not)... 你最好(不).....

You should/ought to... 你应该.....

You need (to)... 你需要.....

2. 表示建议的常用语:

Shall we... ? 我们..... 好吗 ?

Let 's... 咱们.....吧。

What/How about... ?..... 怎么样 ?

Why not... ? 为什么不.....呢 ?

Why don 't you... ? 你为什么.....呢 ?

3. 接受劝告或建议的应答语:

That 's all right. 好的。

Certainly. 当然。

Good idea. 好主意。

4. 不接受劝告或建议的应答语:

I 'm sorry ,but... 很抱歉 ,但是.....

I 'm afraid that... 我恐怕.....



- A. Don't be late next time
 B. You should be blamed
 C. It doesn't matter, I'm also late
 D. Never mind. Come and sit down

『解析』 D。对于道歉应用 "It doesn't matter" 或 "Never mind" 回答, C 项回答不够得体, 而 D 项回答礼貌、自然。



强化闯关

1. —Which film shall we go and see this weekend?
 —_____.
- A. It's up to you to decide
 B. I'm afraid not
 C. I don't agree with you
 D. Yes, I think so
2. —I had been so sure our team would beat the Jazz and win the game but we lost by two points in the last 2 minutes.
 —_____, but don't give up.
- A. Find out the reason
 B. I'm sorry to hear that
 C. Cheer up
 D. Never mind
3. —I should have gone to the wonderful concert with you yesterday.
 —_____. If possible, I wish you would have another chance.
- A. Yes, you should
 B. Take it easy
 C. What a shame
 D. Don't worry
4. —I'm awfully sorry I can't go with you.
 —_____? Haven't you agreed?
- A. How is it
 B. What is it
 C. Why don't you
 D. What do you think
5. —So, Nancy, you had no difficulty finding your way here?
 —_____.
- A. Yes, no difficulty at all
 B. No, none at all
 C. Yes, no problem
 D. Nonsense
6. —Congratulations to you! I heard you got the first in the English Speech Contest.
 —_____.
- A. Don't mention it. I think that's only me past
 B. Thanks. But I think I could have done better
 C. There's nothing to cheer for
 D. No, no. It's a piece of cake
7. —Would you mind if I turned the TV down?
 —_____.

- A. Yes , I don 't mind
 B. No , go right ahead
 C. Yes , please turn it down
 D. Don 't worry. You 'll get used to it soon
8. —I forgot to carry my cell-phone , could I use yours ?
 — _____ .
 A. I wonder how
 B. I don 't wonder
 C. Sorry , it 's out of order
 D. No wonder , here it is
9. —I 'm entering for the 100-meter race.
 — _____ .
 A. Congratulations B. Enjoy yourself C. Good luck D. Wonderful
10. —Paul , I 'd like to have a talk with you at tea break.
 — _____ Have what with me ?
 A. Yes , please. B. Sorry ?
 C. Thanks. D. You 're welcome.
11. —This is English Department of Jiangxi Normal University.
 —Hi , I 'm a student in English Department. I need to know the foreign professor —
 Mr. Smith 's email address.
 — _____ . . . I 'm sorry , Mr. Smith does not have an email address in our system.
 A. Just a minute B. I see C. At your service D. It 's you
12. —Excuse me !
 — _____
 —How can I get to the nearest post office ?
 A. Yes ? B. That 's OK.
 C. What 's wrong ? D. It 's quite wrong.
13. —Hi , Jack ! I 'm glad I came across you here.
 — _____ , Alice ?
 A. Who is that speaking B. How about another cup of tea
 C. Why ? What 's up D. What can I do for you
14. —You look very tired. Why not spare a day to go for an outing with us ?
 — _____ . Work presses.
 A. It is thoughtful of you to say so
 B. Maybe I should
 C. Please don 't disturb you
 D. I can 't afford even a minute , I am afraid



15. —You didn't get hurt at all in the traffic accident?

—_____ . I was a lucky dog.

A. No problem

B. I don't think so

C. I'm afraid not

D. Good heavens no



答案与解析

1. A. It's up to sb. to do sth. 意为"由某人来决定做某事"。

2. B. 听到对方不开心的事时用 B 项回答,含有为对方担忧之意,上下文衔接起来表示"我也为此事难过,但别放弃"。

3. C. 从上下文看,没有去很令人遗憾,"我"希望"你"下次有机会去。

4. A. "How is it/that"表示"怎么会那样呢";C 项若改为"Why can't you"也可以作为答语。

5. B. yes 后接肯定形式, no 后接否定形式;在本题中 yes 表示有困难, no 表示没有困难, none = no + 前述名词,即 no difficulty。

6. B. 按照英美国家的语言习惯,对别人的祝贺应表示感谢,所以 B 项正确。其他选项均是中国式的回答。

7. B. 根据英美国家的语言习惯,对"Would you mind..."的肯定回答是"No. Go ahead"或"Certainly not",否定回答是"I'm sorry..."。

8. C. 常见的拒绝请求或邀请的应答用语有 Sorry, but... / I'd rather you... / Thank you, but... / No way 等。

9. C. 上句说明"我正要参加 100 米赛跑",根据习惯应回答"Good luck";A、D 都是赛后对取得优异成绩的祝贺,B 项不符合语境。

10. B. 由下文可知 Paul 没有听懂对方的话,B 项正确。

11. A. 这是打电话用语,因为接线员不知道 Mr. Smith 的 email,要在系统内查找,所以要对方"稍等"。

《
试
题
调
研
》
(
第
二
辑
)

12. A. 一方说"Excuse me",没有说明什么事情,另一方就会反问,"Yes?"意为"什么事",其他选项均不合语境。

13. C. A 项是打电话用语;B 项是咖啡厅用语;D 项是提供帮助的用语,三项均不合语境。C 项表现出答话者感觉上的突然、意外,不知如何作答。

14. D. 由答语中的"Work presses"可知由于工作压力太大了没办法去,故答案为 D。

15. D. Good heavens 意为"天啊",常用于表示惊讶、谴责或宽慰, no 相当于"I didn't get hurt";No problem 意为"没关系,没问题",用于安慰对方或表示同意;I don't think so 意为"我不这么认为",当不同意对方的观点或看法时,使用本句;I'm afraid not 也具有相近的表达意味,但语气比 I don't think so 更为委婉。



高考大预测



预测一

- You can arrive in Shanghai on time for the fashion show _____ you don't mind taking the night train.
A. provided B. unless C. though D. until
- He is a good student, and works very hard; _____.
A. so it is with her B. so does she
C. so is she D. neither does she
- The number of the cameras they produced this year has increased _____ 30% compared with _____ of last year.
A. with; ones B. to; those C. by; that D. of; it
- In the village, many of the men have gone off to cities in search of higher pay. _____ but the aged and the women stay at home.
A. Not B. All C. None D. Neither
- Walking and running are the oldest, and the newest, excellent _____ exercises for all the ages and fitness levels.
A. bodies shaping B. body's shape C. bodies shaped D. body shaping
- The reason why I gave in is _____ if I didn't.
A. because she would be disappointed
B. that she would be disappointed
C. because she would have a disappointment
D. for she would be disappointed
- I have no idea how it _____ that the man met with trouble again.
A. came about B. came out C. came up D. came across
- _____ much advice I gave him, he did exactly what he wanted to.
A. How B. Whatever C. No matter D. However
- The president's speech was _____ boring; it was, in fact, rather inspiring and interesting.
A. anything but B. nothing but C. no more D. all but
- Can I help you, sir?
—No, thank you. I _____.
A. have served B. am being served C. can serve D. was served
- I expect everything will turn out as your wish.
—_____.

I never liked it anyway.



- A. All right B. The same to you C. No, thanks D. I'd like to
12. Before we moved into the new house, we bought many _____.
A. furnitures B. furniture
C. pieces of furniture D. furniture pieces
13. When in _____ new culture, you must have an opened mind towards _____ new environment you face.
A. a; a B. /; / C. /; the D. a; the
14. China, the world's most populous nation, _____ the WTO on November 10, 2001, _____ China a new place at the table nations.
A. attended; given B. joined; offering
C. joined; offered D. took part in; giving
15. Can it be in the restaurant _____ we had dinner last Sunday _____ you left your wallet?
A. where; where B. where; that C. that; where D. that; that



预测二

1. If you look at the problem _____, maybe you will accept it is something unavoidable in the development of our society.
A. by the other way B. the other way C. another way D. by another way
2. —I'm going to the city this afternoon. Do you have anything _____ there?
—No. Thank you all the same.
A. to be taken B. being taken C. to take D. taken
3. It was quite a serious mistake, _____ caused by carelessness.
A. which I think was B. I think which was
C. which was I think D. I think was which
4. —I have bought a box of chocolates for our daughter.
—Oh, how good a dad! But she doesn't like sweet things. _____ that?
A. Don't you know B. Haven't you known
C. Didn't you know D. Hadn't you known
5. The illness can result in total blindness if _____ untreated.
A. left B. being left C. it were left D. leaving
6. She suggested to the police in the police station that Mr. Smith _____.
A. stole the necklace B. had stolen the necklace
C. should steal the necklace D. would steal the necklace
7. The foreign friends you referred to _____ looking forward to _____ around our university.
A. are; being shown B. being; being shown
C. being; showing D. are; be shown
8. —Show me our permit, please.
—Oh, it's not in my pocket. It _____.



- A. might fall out
B. could fall out
C. should have fallen out
D. must have fallen out
9. —The meeting has begun and _____ he will come.
—Of course, he is sure to come. He 'll speak at the meeting.
A. I believe B. I hope C. I think D. I doubt if
10. Having worked in Japan for 10 years, he is not the same _____.
A. like he was B. like what he was
C. as what he used to be D. as what he used to
11. —Why didn't you tell Anna the truth?
—_____.
A. Yes, I was afraid to be scolded by her B. No, but I wanted to
C. But I did D. I always hate telling lies
12. —How are you getting on with your work?
—I haven't made _____ as I should.
A. such a progress B. such progresses
C. as much progress D. so many progresses
13. _____ five minutes _____ before the last train left, we arrived at the station.
A. There were; to go B. With; to go
C. I was; left D. It had; left
14. —Coffee _____ tea?
—Coffee _____ sugar, _____ no milk.
A. or; and; but B. and; or; but C. but; and; or D. or; but; and
15. All the frightened boys sat _____ there, _____ to speak.
A. still; unable B. still; were unable
C. quiet; unable D. quietly; don't able



预测三

1. In the reading room, we found her _____ at a desk, with her attention _____ on a book.
A. sitting; fixing B. seated; fixed
C. sit; fixing D. sitting; to be fixed
2. —I thought you didn't like coffee.
—Well, I _____ but I _____ now.
A. didn't; can B. did; can
C. usedn't to; do D. usedn't; do
3. —I always look out when crossing the street.
—You're right. You cannot be too _____.
A. nervous B. careful C. hurried D. careless
4. —You didn't phone Tom?

He is a very stingy person.



- _____ Tom ?
- A. Must I phone
B. Shall I phone
C. Should I phone
D. Should I have phoned
5. —Peter , do you think you could drive me home ?
— _____
- A. It doesn 't matter.
B. No , I couldn 't.
C. I 'll be there on time.
D. Sure , why not ?
6. As everybody knows , _____ ant has two _____.
- A. an ; stomachs
B. the ; stomachs
C. that ; bodies
D. an ; necks
7. —Nancy is not coming tonight.
—But she _____.
- A. promises
B. promised
C. will promise
D. had promised
8. We have _____ work to do today. I 'm afraid we can 't finish all. Shall we put some-thing _____ till tomorrow ?
- A. a mass of ; more important
B. masses of ; less important
C. mass of ; little important
D. masses of ; much important
9. We didn 't plan our art exhibition like that but it _____ very well.
- A. worked out
B. tried out
C. went on
D. carried on
10. —You seemed to be impressed by his skill.
—Not exactly so. It was his courage _____ his skill _____ really impressed me.
- A. rather than ; that
B. as well as ; which
C. but also ; what
D. together with ; that
11. Her relatives are all here and his _____ come yet. _____ seems to have been no need for us to wait for them.
- A. haven 't ; It
B. hasn 't ; They
C. hasn 't ; We
D. haven 't ; There
12. She made many new discoveries , _____ I think are _____ great importance to sci-ence.
- A. most of them ; beyond
B. some of which ; of
C. a few of them ; of
D. few of which ; with
13. Keep in mind _____ you want others to respect you , you must respect others first.
- A. that when
B. that if
C. if when
D. when if
14. By no means _____ little about the interests of the people.
- A. the Party cares
B. does the Party care
C. the Party doesn 't care
D. doesn 't the Party care
15. —Do you think he 'll finish the job before five ?
—He will surely finish it on time _____ he 's left to do it in his own way.
- A. in that
B. so long as
C. in case
D. as far as



14. _____ the death of her mother , she burst into tears.
 A. Heard
 B. Having heard
 C. On hearing
 D. To hear
15. Being able to speak another language fluently is a great _____ when you 're looking for a job.
 A. advantage
 B. chance
 C. assistant
 D. importance



预测五

1. That escaped prisoner camped in _____ wood but he didn 't light _____ fire because smoke rising from _____ wood might attract _____ attention.
 A. / ; the ; a ; /
 B. a ; a ; the ; the
 C. a ; the ; a ; /
 D. a ; a ; the ; /
2. All the people looked at the man _____ .
 A. at surprise
 B. in surprise
 C. surprising
 D. to their surprise
3. —Why did you come by taxi ?
 —My bike broke down last night and I _____ it repaired.
 A. didn 't have
 B. don 't have
 C. won 't have
 D. haven 't had
4. —Do you have any idea what Tom did yesterday afternoon ?
 —I know he spent at least as much time playing football as he _____ .
 A. did writing
 B. wrote
 C. spent to write
 D. was writing
5. —I 'm afraid I have no idea what to do.
 — _____ .
 A. I agree
 B. I don 't know either , but I could try
 C. All right
 D. That 's great
6. —Has your father finished his essay yet ?
 —I don 't know ; he _____ it this morning.
 A. wrote
 B. has written
 C. had written
 D. was writing
7. —Do you think the weather is good enough for an outing ?
 —Yes , you couldn 't hope for _____ at the time of the year.
 A. a nice day
 B. the nicer day
 C. a nicer day
 D. the nicest day
8. —You seem to have had that car for years.
 —Yes , I should sell it _____ it still runs.
 A. while
 B. after
 C. until
 D. before
9. Cook was a strict but good captain , _____ who , unusually , took care of the sailors on his ship.
 A. the one
 B. one
 C. that
 D. this
10. It is necessary that he _____ the college entrance examination.
 A. should attend
 B. will attend
 C. must attend
 D. had to attend
11. —Shall I come some time next week ?
 —Come _____ .

- A. if you like B. you 'd like to C. what you like D. when you like
12. He did all he could to try to get the car to start ,but it _____ work.
A. wouldn 't B. didn 't C. shouldn 't D. shan 't
13. Her face gave her _____ when she told a lie.
A. off B. away C. up D. out
14. —You _____ your teacher for help. He is kind-hearted.
—Yes. A whole day _____ .
A. can ask ; will waste
B. must have asked ; had wasted
C. could have asked ; was wasted
D. shouldn 't have asked ; would be wasted
15. _____ up your mind , or you 'll miss the chance.
A. Make B. Making C. Made D. To make



预测六

1. —Abby ,can I use your computer now ?
— _____. It doesn 't work.
A. That 's all right B. I 'm afraid not
C. You 're welcome D. It doesn 't matter
2. It was an exciting moment for these football fans this year , _____ for the first time in years their team won the World Cup.
A. that B. while C. which D. when
3. If you have some trouble with work , I can _____ you a job in my company.
A. offer B. accept C. supply D. provide
4. —What have you been doing recently ?
—I _____ a trip to Shanghai and have just returned.
A. took B. have taken C. had taken D. have been taking
5. Cut the apple into halves so that the twins may each get _____ half.
A. every B. each C. either D. any
6. My study of biology has _____ much of my spare time ,but it has given me a great deal of enjoyment.
A. taken off B. taken down C. taken up D. taken away
7. It is to observe the earth _____ satellites carry television far into space.
A. when B. where C. which D. that
8. The great use of the school education is not so much to teach you things _____ to teach the art of learning.
A. rather than B. than C. as D. nor
9. Historically , _____ main material for making tables has been wood ,but _____ metal and stone have also been used.

He 's not a generous person.



- A. the ;the B. the ;/ C. / ;the D. / ;/
10. You must have read about Mark Twain long ago , _____ ?
A. didn 't you B. haven 't you C. mustn 't you D. needn 't you
11. She is tired , _____ she will make another test.
A. still but B. and yet C. but also D. but still
12. Don 't come this morning. I would rather you _____ the day after tomorrow.
A. come B. came C. are to come D. will come
13. The professor gave orders that the experiment _____ before 6.
A. was finished B. will finish C. be finished D. shall be finished
14. People often want to know what my job is. Often I _____ that question.
A. ask B. am asking C. get asked D. get asking
15. Taking this kind of medicine , if _____ , it will possibly do him great harm.
A. to continue B. continued C. continuing D. having continued



答案与解析

预测一

1. A. 根据句意,空格中缺少一个表示"如果"并能引导条件状语从句的连词。provided 作连词时,表示假定的条件,意为"如果"。unless"除非",though"尽管",until"直到"。
2. A. 表示后者与前者的情况相同时,常用"so + 系动词/助动词/情态动词 + 主语"。但如果句子结构中既出现了系动词,又出现了行为动词或者其他不同的形式,通常用"so it is with sb./sth."或"it is/was the same with sb./sth."。
3. C. 表示增加或下降的程度用介词 by, that 代替前面出现的 number。
4. C. 该题考查不定代词用法。根据句意"除了老人和妇女,这个村庄几乎所有的男人都到城里去挣钱了"可推知,C项符合语境。none but "除了……,没有……"。
5. D. 此题考查"名词 + 动名词"作修饰语的表达方式。答案为 D。
6. B. 该句的主语是 reason,其表语从句用 that 引导。
7. A. come about"(尤指难以防止的情况)发生";come out"出现,开花";come up"长出,出现";come across"偶然遇见"。本句句意为"我很纳闷,那人怎么又遇到麻烦了"。
8. D. however much 引导让步状语从句,相当于 no matter how much,意为"无论我给他多少建议"。
9. A. 由信息句"it was, in fact, rather inspiring and interesting"可看出总统的演说并非单调、乏味,给人的是除 boring 以外的其他的某种感觉,故 A 项最佳。
10. B. 此题在语境中考查语态及时态。由对话可知"我"是被服务的对象,排除 A、C 选项,句意为"我已经点过菜了,正在等候上菜"。
11. B. 本题考查交际英语在具体语境中的运用。对"祝你一切如愿"的回答用"你也



如此"符合英语表达习惯。

12. C. furniture 是不可数名词,表示量时用 a piece of, two/three/some/many pieces of 来表达。
13. D. 考查冠词。题中的两个名词都是不可数名词,第一空说到了一个新的文化,表泛指,所以用不定冠词;第二空名词后有定语从句修饰,表示特指,用定冠词。
14. B. 分析句子可知,加入某个组织常用 join, attend 指参加会议, take part in 指参加活动。由后一空的语意可知为中国提供一个新平台的是 WTO,而逻辑主语 WTO 与 offer 之间为主动关系,故用现在分词作伴随状语。
15. B. 分析该句可看出是强调句结构 "It can be in the restaurant... that you left your wallet", 强调介词短语。restaurant 后接定语从句,定语从句中不缺少主语或宾语,故排除 D; 用 where 引导定语从句,在从句中作地点状语。

预测二

1. B. 考查名词短语的特殊用法。名词短语直接作状语,不需要加介词,意为"另一种方式"。若 C 项改为 in another way, 也符合语法要求。
2. A. 从语境可看出所选动作表示将来,所以用不定式作定语;句子的主语 you 不是不定式的逻辑主语,所以用被动式。
3. A. which 引导非限制性定语从句, I think 是插入语。考生应注意各词的顺序。
4. C. 答语中已经告诉对方"她不喜欢甜食",说明现在已经知道此事,所以本句话的时态应用一般过去时,表示在说话之前的情况。
5. A. 若从句的主语与主句的主语一致,且从句的谓语含有助动词 be, 这时可省略从句中的主语和谓语部分。
6. B. 根据句意 suggest 在此意为"表明",不是"建议",所以其宾语从句不用虚拟语气,此句中用过去完成时,强调"过去的过去"。
7. A. you referred to 是定语从句,修饰主语名词,第一空是谓语动词,第二空是 are looking forward to 的宾语, to 是介词,后面需用动名词作宾语。
8. A. 由句意可知说话人并不能肯定许可证是否掉了, might 表推测,语气最不肯定。
9. D. 此题考查在具体语境中的词义辨析。由句意可知说话人对 he 是否能来表示怀疑。
10. C. 本题考查 the same... as 结构及 used to be 的用法。the same 与 as 是固定搭配,排除 A、B 两项, what he used to be 作介词 as 的宾语,其中 what 是 used to be 的表语,不能省略。
11. C. 因 why 引导的疑问句不可以用 yes/no 来回答,故排除 A、B 两项; D 项与题意不符,答语 "But I did" 是对事情的解释, did 代替 told her the truth, 意为"我已告诉她真相了"。
12. C. progress 是不可数名词, as/so... as "像.....一样"。句意为"我没有取得我该取得的那么大的进步"。
13. B. 该题考查"with + 宾语 + 不定式"结构。因主句是 "we arrived at the station", 所以前一句应为状语,可排除 A、C、D 选项,因这三个选项均无任何连词连接状语从句。



14. A. 根据语意,“要咖啡还是茶”用 or 表选择;“咖啡加糖”用 and 连接;“不加奶”表达转折含义,用 but。
15. A. still 表示动作的静止,即“不动”;quiet 指周围环境的“静”;calm 表示情绪上的“平静”;silent 表示“不出声”。unable to speak 是动词短语作状语。

预测三

1. B. seat 是及物动词,常用过去分词作表语或补足语,意为“(使)就座,向……提供座位”;fix 是及物动词,fix one's attention on sth. “把注意力集中在……”,fix 与 attention 之间是动宾关系,所以用过去分词作介词 with 的补足语。
2. C. 根据句意,第一空表示过去曾经,所以用 didn't 或 usedn't to;第二空表示现在,应用现在时,用 do 代替 like coffee。
3. B. “cannot... too...”意为“怎么……也不过分”。
4. D. should have done 表示“过去应该做却没有做”。
5. D. D 项表示肯定的答复,意指“没问题,当然可以”。
6. A. 该题考查名词的复数及冠词。名词 stomach 是以 [k] 读音结尾,所以复数形式是直接加-s,ant 前用不定冠词表示类别。
7. B. 从信息词 but 可看出她答应过要来的,promise 这一动作发生在过去,所以用一般过去时。
8. B. A 项在语法上正确,但不符合语境。事情太多做不完,先做重要的,不太重要的放到明天去做。
9. A. work out 作不及物动词词组,意为“(情况)发展、进行情况良好”;try out 试验;go on 继续;carry on 进行下去,进行。
10. A. 分析可知该句是强调句。B、D 两项都表示并列意义,C 项 but also 应与 not only 搭配;A 项 rather than “而不是,并非”,符合语境“真正让我印象深刻的是他的勇气而不是他的技巧”。
11. D. 句中 his 是名词性物主代词,后面省略了 relatives,因此谓动词用复数,排除 B、C 选项;第二空为“There is no need for sb. to do sth.”句型,在 be 前加了 seems。
12. B. 该题是非限制性定语从句,可排除 A、C 选项;介词 of 后接抽象名词,相当于形容词,此题中 of importance = important;some of which 相当于 and some of the discoveries。

《
试
题
调
研
》(第
二
辑)

13. B. that 引导宾语从句,if 引导条件状语从句。
14. B. by no means “决不”,置于句首时,句子要倒装。
15. B. so long as “只要……就”,in that “在……方面”,in case “一旦,万一”,as far as “就……而言”。

预测四

1. D. received at the store 作定语修饰名词 change,与 change 之间是被动关系,returned 与动词 forgotten 并列,其他选项中 paid,remembered,shared 不符合题意。
2. B. bring down the house “使全场轰动,博得全场喝彩”;pull down “摧毁,推翻”;break down “倒塌,分解”;break up “打碎,驱散”。
3. D. 考查情态动词表示推测时的用法。根据语境可知,“云在聚集”与“下大雨”之



间没有必然的联系,只是可能,所以选 D。

4. D. 四个选项都是表示将来时态,be going to/be about to/be to 表示计划要做某事,但 be about to 不能与将来的时间状语连用;will 用于将来时,通常表示临时决定或打算要做的事。根据句意可知“我去寄信”是临时决定,所以选 D。
5. D. 本题考查连词及“疑问词 + do you think + 主语 + 谓语动词”结构。先排除 C 项,因其不符合句意及常理;A 项与 B 项结构错误。D 项中 since 用作连词引导原因状语从句,常在主句前,表示已知的原因;who 在主句中作主语,后接插入语 do you think。
6. D. 第一空意为“位于”,第二空为“放置”。
7. C. later“后来”;latest“最近的”。
8. B. 本题考查交际英语在日常生活中的运用。对方感到焦虑时应给予安慰。
9. A. as 引导让步状语从句时,将表语、状语提前。
10. A. 此题考查 with 的独立结构。open 在此为形容词,wide 作副词时意为“宽广地,敞开地”,widely 是副词,意为“广泛地”,lamp 与动词 burn 在逻辑上是主动关系,所以用 burning。
11. B. 分析题干可知,主语从句中缺少主语,that 引导名词性从句时不担当任何成分,it 不可作连词用,只有 what 能够引导主语从句;第二空为表语从句,不缺少主语或宾语,所以用 that 引导。
12. A. fall in love 为短暂性动作,不能与表示时间段的时间状语连用,be in love 表状态,是动作的延续。
13. C. that 引导同位语从句时不能省略,suggestion 后接同位语从句时,谓语动词要用“(should) + 动词原形”。
14. C. “on + v-ing”表示“一……就”。强调分词表示的动作与谓语动词表示的动作同时或几乎同时发生。
15. A. advantage“优势,有利条件”符合题意“当你找工作时,能够流利地说一门外语是个很有利的条件”。chance“机遇”,assistant“助手,助理”,importance“重要性”。

预测五

1. D. wood 在此为可数名词,意为“树林,森林”,所以第一空用不定冠词表示类指;第三空用定冠词 the 表示特指;light a fire“生火,点火”,attract attention“引起注意”。
2. B. in surprise 是介词短语结构,在这里起副词作用,意思是“惊奇地”。
3. D. 从问句可看出“我”的自行车还没有修好,强调现在,所以用现在完成时。
4. A. did 代指前面出现的动词 spent, did writing 相当于 spent time in writing。
5. B. 上句说“恐怕我不知道怎么做”,回答“我也不知道,但我可以试试”。其他选项不符合语境。
6. D. 从问句和回答可知“我不知道父亲是否已经完成论文”,D 项用过去进行时强调在过去一段时间内一直在进行的动作,不强调完成;A 项表示在过去发生,可能完成;C 项强调“过去的过去”。
7. C. 比较级用于否定句中,表示肯定意义,用不定冠词表示泛指。
8. A. 根据句意用 while 表示转折,意为“而”。答句句意为:我应该卖掉它,可是它还

能跑。

9. B. one 指代前面的名词 captain ,作 captain 的同位语 ,后接 who 引导的定语从句。
10. A. It is necessary/natural/strange/a pity/ suggested/ requested... 后接 that 从句时 ,从句的谓语动词用“(should)+ 动词原形”。
11. D. when 引导的时间状语从句对应上句的 some time。答句句意为 :你想什么时间来都行。
12. A. wouldn't 表示“拒绝做……” ,其他选项无此用法。
13. B. give away“泄露 ,出卖” ,give off“发出 ,放出(光、热、气味等)” ;give up“放弃” ;give out“用完 ,耗尽”。根据句意可知答案为 B。
14. C. could have done“过去本该做某事而没做” ,有“责备”之意 ;后句应用一般过去时 ,动词 waste 与主语之间是被动关系 ,所以要用被动语态。
15. A. 该题是“祈使句 + and/or + 陈述句”句型。句意为 :下定决心 ,否则你会错失良机。

预测六

1. B. 本题考查交际用语。根据后面的答语“电脑坏了”可看出设空处应表示否定。
2. D. 该题考查分隔式定语从句 ,when 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 moment。
3. A. offer 后可接双宾语 ,accept 后不接双宾语 ,supply 的用法为 supply sth. to sb. 或 supply sb. with sth. ;provide 的用法同 supply 相似 :provide sth. for sb. 或 provide sb. with sth. 。
4. A. 该题容易受问句时态的影响而错选 D 项 ,根据答语的后半句 have just returned ,说明“去上海旅行”是过去的事情 ,所以用一般过去时。
5. C. either 表示两者中的任何一个。
6. C. take up“占据”符合题意 ,take off“起飞 ,拿掉” ,take down“记下” ,take away“带走”。
7. D. 强调句式“It is... that...”。句意为 :正是为了观察地球 ,卫星才携带电视到遥远的太空。
8. C.“not so much A as B”意为“与其说 A 倒不如说 B”。此题赘余成分较多 ,考生应抓住句子主干作答。

《
试
题
调
研

《
第
二
辑

9. B. 名词 material 后有介词短语限制 ,表示特指 ,metal and stone 是不可数名词 ,不用冠词表示类指。
10. A. must 在此表示推测 ,因为句中有具体的表示过去的时间状语 long ago ,可知 must 是对过去某一时间发生的事情的推测 ,反意疑问句用一般过去时。
11. D. 根据前后句意 ,表示转折 ,but 应在 still 前 ,but still 意为“但是仍然……”。
12. B. would rather 后接从句用虚拟语气 ,谓语动词用过去时。
13. C. order , plan , suggestion 等名词后的表语从句或同位语从句的谓语用“(should)+ 动词原形”。
14. C. get 后接过去分词 ,表示被动。
15. B. if 后省略了 it is ,选项动词与句子主语 it 之间是被动关系 ,所以用过去分词作状语。



疯狂阅读

拓展阅读

【READING 1】

Emotional Beckham Quits as Captain



文前导读 六年前 25 岁的贝克汉姆从英格兰队临时主教练皮特·泰勒手

中接过了队长袖标。六年后，英格兰队在世界杯 1/4 决赛中点球负于葡萄牙队，赛后，31 岁的贝克汉姆宣布辞去英格兰足球队队长一职……在新闻发布会上，贝克汉姆流下了泪水。



贝克汉姆的世界杯：光荣难掩悲伤，遗憾终结梦想

The England midfielder, on the **verge** of tears, read a statement announcing he would **step down** with the change of manager, as Sven-Goran Eriksson hands over to Steve McClaren.

Beckham said former **caretaker** England manager Peter Taylor had given him "the greatest honor of my career ... and fulfilled my childhood dream" by appointing him as captain in November 2000 for a **friendly** with Italy in Turin.

But he continued: "I feel the time is right to pass on the **armband**."

"As we enter a new era under Steve McClaren, it has been an honor and a privilege to have captained our country and I want to stress that I wish to continue to play for England."

"And I look forward to helping both the new captain and Steve McClaren in any way I can."

"I came to this decision some time ago but I had hoped to announce it on the back of a successful World Cup. Sadly, that wasn't to be."

Beckham had been in tears after being substituted due to injury early in the second

He 's very tightfisted.

拓展阅读

话说
小气



half of Saturday 's agonizing defeat by Portugal in a **penalty shootout**.

It followed a Group B campaign and a second-round victory over Ecuador (厄瓜多尔), secured with a Beckham **free kick**, in which England had never really got into gear (进入状态).

"Our performance during this World Cup has not been enough to progress further and both myself and all the players regret that — and are hurt by that more than people realize," said the 31-year-old.

Beckham thanked the players, Taylor, Eriksson and the coaching staff for their support during his time as captain, along with the media and the England fans.



"For me it has been an absolute honor."

"Finally, I have lived the dream," Beckham said, with his voice **faltering** with the emotion.

"I am extremely proud to have worn the armband and to have been captain of England. And for that I will always be grateful."

Beckham, wearing a navy blue England suit then got up and left the media center at England 's training ground at Buhlertal, near their Baden

hotel.



尝试命题

- Steve McClaren is _____.
 - one of the football players in England
 - Beckham 's friend
 - the new captain of the England soccer team
 - the new coach of the England soccer team
- What is Beckham planning to do after he steps down with the change of manager?
 - He will act as a coach.
 - He will continue to play football in another country.
 - He will continue to play in England team.
 - He will do some research in football.

《 试题调研 》

Notes

verge *n.* 边缘

step down 辞职,下台

caretaker *n.* 管理者

friendly *n.* 友谊比赛

armband *n.* 臂章

penalty shootout 点球大战

free kick 任意球

falter *v.* (声音)颤抖,支支吾吾

Keys : 1. D 2. C



话说
小气

他很吝啬。

【READING 2】

Teens ' Ears Pounded by Sound



文前导读 科学家说 :马上调低音量 ,尽量别用耳机 ,青少年长时间听 MP3

会对听力造成永久性伤害。

Before you listen to a **portable** music player , listen to the experts ' advice first : Turn it down !

A recent **poll** in the US found that 51 per cent of high school students and 37 per cent of adults have experienced at least one **symptom** of hearing loss.



Teens are listening to portable MP3 music players , such as Apple iPods , louder and longer. They probably don ' t realize that the sound of the portable player can be as damaging to their ears as the noise of a jet engine !

The poll was conducted for the American Speech-Language-Hearing Association (ASHA). Results showed that 28 per cent of high school students and 26 per cent of adults have had to turn up the **volume** on their televisions.

The poll also found that 29 per cent of students reported saying " what " or " huh " during conversations because they couldn ' t hear things clearly enough. Further , 17 per cent of students and 12 per cent of adults said they have heard ringing in their ears.

Most students said they used their portable music players for less than an hour at a time. And 59 per cent of students said they played music at a high volume.

Experts say more research is needed to prove a direct link between portable music and hearing loss. They think , however , that these players are leading to hearing problems.

" Many kids who are using this type of technology are plugging noisy rock concerts into their ears ," said Pam Mason of the ASHA.

How can you protect your hearing ? Experts suggest turning down the volume and reducing the amount of time you spend listening to music on a portable player. They also suggest changing from earphones to larger speakers. Big traditional **headsets** are also healthier than modern earphones. Instead of carrying sound directly into your ears , traditional head-phones allow the sound to spread out , according to the US National Institute of Health.

拓展
阅读



尝试命题

1. Which of the following is **correct** ?

- A. Adults like listening to MP3 music players louder and longer.
- B. 28 per cent of high school students have to watch TV with a lower volume.
- C. About 1/3 students can ' t hear clearly enough during conversations.

Her boss is a skinflint.

- D. Most students listen to their portable music players for less than an hour in a day.
2. In order to protect our hearing , we can _____.
- A. turn down the volume B. use larger speakers
C. enjoy music with headsets D. all above

Notesportable *adj.* 便携的poll *n.* 调查symptom *n.* 症状volume *n.* 音量headset *n.* 头戴式耳机**Keys** : 1. C 2. D**【READING 3】****Living in Fear**

文前导读 透过战火下伊拉克孩子们的眼睛,人们看到的是恐惧、绝望和无助的泪水。受伤的伊拉克小女孩,她在期待着什么?



A four-year-old girl is lying in the arms of a doctor. She has just become motherless. Her pink clothes are bloodied and her eyes stare at something only she can see. She has suffered from a **bombing** near her home in southern Iraq.

Every day we see images like this on our televisions. We see young Iraqi children begging for food and water from American and British soldiers as they move through towns and cities towards the capital, Baghdad. We see these children following grown-ups, carrying bags of belongings almost the same size as their small bodies as they flee their homes in Baghdad.

They represent just some of the young lives that have been turned upside down by the ongoing war. And they show the terrible price being paid by Iraqi children.

"Dad, why are the Americans striking us? Are we going to be killed?" asks the son of Abu Sinar, an Iraqi engineer. Abu finds it hard to explain this war to his eight-year-old son.

He tries to comfort him by saying: "The bombs are far away from us. The Americans are fighting the soldiers. We're going to be all right." Even though Abu knows this isn't always the truth.

In southern parts of the country, like Iraq's second largest city, Basra, the United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund (UNICEF) is working to repair the damage caused by fighting. "The organization is working to provide clean water and restore electrical power," said Geoffrey Keele, a UNICEF spokesman.

But little else can be done. In Baghdad , parents give their children **sleeping pills** to try and let them escape the sound of exploding bombs. And all the schools are closed.

" All they can do is listen to and hear the war , " said Keele. " There is suffering in Baghdad. It is clear that the bombing is affecting the **mental well-being** of the children. " Despite UNICEF 's efforts , dirty water is being blamed for **cholera** outbreaks in southern Iraq. **Diarrhea** is spreading among the children , sometimes leading to death.

Nearly 50 per cent of Iraq 's population is under 15 years old. And 30 per cent of them already suffered before the war from **malnutrition** according to international aid organizations. Now the situation is worse , but continual fighting makes it impossible to count the number who are hungry , sick , injured or even dead.



尝试命题

- The organization of UNICEF in Iraq has done something like **except** _____.
 - striking the Americans in street
 - repairing the damage caused by fighting
 - providing clean water to Iraqi children
 - restoring electrical power in Basra
- Which statement is **true** according to the passage ?
 - Young Iraqi children had once refused the offer of food and water from American and British soldiers in Baghdad.
 - To be frank ,Iraqi children were safe enough during the war because of UNICEF 's help.
 - Many Iraqi children were forced to take steeping pills to escape the sound of exploding bombs.
 - More than half of the population in Iraq is under 15 years old.

Notes

bombing *n.* 轰炸

sleeping pill 安眠药

mental well-being 心理健康

cholera *n.* 霍乱

diarrhea *n.* 腹泻

malnutrition *n.* 营养不良

Keys : 1. A 2. C



She never wants to splash the cash.



双语天地

【READING 1】

The Eleven Touching Experiences in Life



文前导读 年华似水,生命中的每一次感动就好像夜空中的星星,璀璨夺目,指引着我们一路前行。在那条未知的旅途上,我们还将被未知的人和未知的事在未知的时光感动着。

(1) It hurts to love someone and not be loved in return. But what is more painful is to love someone and never find the courage to let that person know how you feel.

(2) A sad thing in life is when you meet someone who means a lot to you, only to find out in the end that it is never meant to be and you just have to let go.

(3) The best kind of friend is the kind you can sit on a porch swing with, never say a word, and then walk away feeling like it was the best conversation you've ever had.

(4) It's true that we don't know what we've got until we lose it, but it's also true that we don't know what we've been missing until it arrives.

(5) It takes only a minute to **get a crush on** someone, an hour to like someone, and a day to love someone — but it takes a lifetime to forget someone.

(6) Don't go for looks; they can deceive. Don't go for wealth; even that fades away. Go for someone who makes you smile because it takes only a smile to make a dark day seem bright.

(7) Dream what you want to dream; go where you want to go; be what you want to be, because you have only one life and one chance to do all the things you want to do.

(8) Always put yourself in the other's shoes.

(1) 只有付出的爱是痛苦的, 但比这更痛苦的是爱一个人却没有勇气让那人知道。

(2) 生命中令人悲伤的一件事是你遇到了一个对你来说很重要的人, 但却最终发现你们有缘无分, 因此你不得不放手。

(3) 最好的朋友就是那种能和你促膝而坐, 彼此不说只字片语, 分别时却感到这是你有过的最好的一次交流。

(4) 的确只有当我们失去时才知道曾拥有的是什么, 同样, 只有当我们拥有时才知道曾经失去了什么。

(5) 迷上一个人只需一分钟, 喜欢上一个人需要一小时, 爱上一个人则需要一天, 然而, 忘记一个人却是一辈子的事情。

(6) 别倾心于容貌, 因为它具有欺骗性; 别倾心于财富, 因为它会消散。倾心于那个能带给你笑容的人吧, 因为一个笑容便能使漫漫长夜如白昼般明亮。

(7) 做你想做的梦, 去你想去的地方, 成为你想成为的人, 因为你只有一次生命, 也只有一次机会去做所有你想做的事情。

(8) 要设身处地为别人着

If you feel that it hurts you ,it probably hurts the person too.

(9) A careless word may **kindle** strife ;a cruel word may wreck a life ;a timely word may level stress ;a loving word may heal the wound.

(10) The happiest of people don 't necessarily have the best of everything ;they just make the most of everything that comes along their way.

(11) Love begins with a smile ,grows with a kiss ,ends with a tear. When you were born ,you were crying and everyone around you was smiling. Live your life so that when you die ,you 're the one smiling and everyone around you is crying.

Notes

get a crush on 迷恋.....

kindle v. 点燃 ,点火

【READING 2】

A Boy and an Apple Tree



文前导读 有一棵大树 ,春天倚着她幻想 ;夏天倚着她繁茂 ;秋天倚着她成

熟 ;冬天倚着她沉思。这棵大树就是爸爸妈妈。No matter how busy you are , share some time with your parents !



(1) A long time ago ,there was a huge apple tree. A little boy loved to come and play around it every day. He climbed to the tree top ,ate the apples ,took a nap under the shadow. . . He loved the tree and the tree loved to play with him.

(2) As time went by the little boy had grown up and he no longer played around the tree. One day ,the boy came back to the tree and looked sad. " Come and play with me ," the tree asked

想。如果一双鞋你穿着夹脚 ,别人的感觉可能也一样。

(9) 无心话语可能引发争执 ,无情之词可能折损生命 ,适时温语可能消释压力 ,而关爱之声可能抚平心灵创伤。

(10) 幸福之人并非拥有一切 ,只是尽力享受生活的赐予。

(11) 爱情以笑开始 ,以吻转浓 ,以泪结束。当你哭着降临人世时 ,身边的每个人都在为此欢笑。好好生活吧 ,这样你就能含笑离开人世 ,而身边的每个人都在为你哭泣。

(1) 很久以前有一棵苹果树。一个小男孩每天都喜欢来到树旁玩耍。他爬到树顶 ,吃苹果 ,在树阴里打盹.....他爱这棵树 ,树也爱和他一起玩。

(2) 随着时间的流逝 ,小男孩长大了。他不再到树旁玩耍了。一天 ,男孩回到树旁 ,看起来很悲伤。" 来和我玩吧 !" 树说。

双语天地

He 's a real Scrooge.

话说
小气



the boy.

(3) "I am no longer a kid, I won't play around trees anymore," the boy replied. "I want toys. I need money to buy them."

(4) "Sorry, but I don't have money... but you can pick all my apples and sell them. So, you will have money." The boy was so excited. He picked all the apples on the tree and left happily. The boy didn't come back after he picked the apples. The tree was sad.

(5) One day, the boy returned and the tree was so excited. "Come and play with me," the tree said. "I don't have time to play. I have to work for my family. We need a house for shelter. Can you help me?" "Sorry, I don't have a house. But you can cut off my branches to build your house." So the boy cut all the branches of the tree and left happily.

(6) The tree was glad to see him happy but the boy didn't appear since then. The tree was again lonely and sad. One hot summer day, the boy returned and the tree was delighted. "Come and play with me," the tree said.

(7) "I am sad and getting old. I want to go sailing to relax myself. Can you give me a boat?" the boy asked. "Use my trunk to build the boat.

《
试
题
调
研
》
(
第
二
辑
)

You can sail and be happy." So the boy cut the tree trunk to make a boat. He went sailing and did not show up for a long time.

(8) Finally, the boy returned after he left for many years. "Sorry, my boy. But I don't have anything for you anymore. No more apples for you," the tree said. "I don't have teeth to bite," the boy replied. "No more trunk for you to climb on." "I am too old for that now," the boy said. "I really want to give you all... the only thing left is my dying root," the tree said with tears.

(3) "我不再是小孩了,我不会再到树旁玩耍了。"男孩答道,"我想要玩具,我需要钱来买。"

(4) "很遗憾,我没有钱.....但是你可以采摘我所有的苹果拿去卖。这样你就有钱了。"男孩很兴奋。他摘掉树上所有的苹果,然后高兴地离开了。从那以后男孩很久都没有再来。树很伤心。

(5) 一天,男孩回来了,树非常兴奋。"来和我玩吧。"树说。"我没有时间玩,我得为我的家庭工作。我们需要一个房子来遮风挡雨,你能帮我吗?"很遗憾,我没有房子。但是,你可以砍下我的树枝来建房子。"于是,男孩砍下所有的树枝,高兴地离开了。

(6) 看到他高兴,树也很高兴。但是,男孩很长时间都没再出现,树又开始孤独,伤心了。一个炎热的夏日,男孩回来了,树很高兴。"来和我玩吧!"树说。

(7) "我很伤心,也正在渐渐变老。我想去航海放松自己。你能不能给我一条船?"男孩问。"砍下我的树干去造船吧!这样你就可以远航,你就会快乐。"于是,男孩砍倒树干去造船。他航海去了,很长一段时间未露面。

(8) 许多年后男孩终于回来了。"很遗憾,我的孩子,我再也没有任何东西可以给你了。没有苹果给你。"树说。"我没有牙齿啃。"男孩答道。"没有树干供你爬。""现在,我老了,爬不上去了。"男孩说。"我真的想把一切都给你.....我仅剩下的东西是快要死去的树根。"树含着眼泪说。"现在,我不再需要什么东西

他是个不折不扣的守财奴。

"I don't need much now, just a place to rest. I am tired after all these years", the boy replied. "Good! Old tree root is the best place to lean on and rest. Come here, please sit down with me and have a rest." The boy sat down and the tree was glad and smiled with tears...

(9) This is a story of everyone. The tree stands for our parents. When we were young, we loved to play with them... When we grow up, we leave them, and come to them only when we need something or when we are in trouble. No matter what happened, our parents will always be there and give everything they have to make us happy. You may think that the boy is cruel to the tree but that's how all of us are treating our parents.

【READING 3】

Have Your Own Palace

一人一座紫禁城



文前导读

你想象过像古代帝王那样整天待在紫禁城里吗?紫禁城虚拟

网络之旅在新科技的帮助下即将于2008年开通,到时候你可以不受任何限制地探索紫禁城的奥秘.....



(1) Imagine being the only person in the Forbidden City. You could stay there all day without swarms of people crowding around. You'd be able to look at the ancient treasures without worrying about other visitors pushing you for a better view.

(2) Well, in two years' time you'll be able to have such an experience, just like the former emperors used to. The only difference is that your Forbidden City fun will be online.

了,只需要一个地方来休息。经过了这些年我太累了。”男孩答到。“太好了!老树根就是倚着休息的最好地方。过来,和我一起坐下休息吧。”男孩坐下了,树很高兴,含泪而笑.....

(9) 这是一个发生在每一个人身上的故事。那棵树就像我们的父母。我们小的时候,喜欢和爸爸妈妈玩.....长大后,便离开他们,只有在我们需要父母亲,或是遇到了困难的时候,才会回去找他们。尽管如此,父母却总是有求必应,为了我们的幸福,无私地奉献自己的一切。你也许觉得那个男孩很残忍,但我们何尝不是这样呢?

(1) 想象一下紫禁城里只有你一个人的情景吧。你可以一整天都待在里面,身边再也不会挤满蜂拥的游人。你也可以尽情欣赏古迹珍宝,不用担心别人为了抢占观赏的有利位置,把你推来搡去。

(2) 在两年的时间里,你就能实现这个愿望了,就像古代帝王那样。不过,唯一的区别就是紫禁城带给你的乐趣来自于网络之中。

双语天地

She's such a penny pincher. 她真是个守财奴。

话说
小气



(3) Thanks to new technology, a **virtual** tour of the Forbidden City will be **available** online by 2008. The project — jointly driven by the Palace Museum and computer company IBM — aims to help teenagers around the world become more interested in Chinese culture.

(4) The project will offer an **interactive**, **three-dimensional** view of the palace. The virtual tour will provide **images** from all over the 780 000-square-metre palace.

(5) "The Palace Museum is a big book; there are always places you haven't read about," said Hu Chui from the museum. There are many rooms closed for protection. But the virtual platform breaks the **boundaries** of time and space, meaning visitors can see whatever they want.

(6) "The interaction and games content in the virtual tour will attract more young people to understand and love our cultural **heritage**," added Hu.

(7) In the virtual tour, historical figures will actually talk to visitors and answer their questions. The stories behind the buildings and treasures will also be told.

(8) "The online environment, presented in both Chinese and English, enables visitors to experience the culture and stories of the museum," said James Yeh, an IBM official.

(3) 紫禁城虚拟网络之旅在新技术的帮助下即将于 2008 年开通。此项目由故宫和 IBM 电脑公司联合发起,旨在吸引世界各地的青少年能更多地了解中华文化。

(4) 这个项目会提供紫禁城的互动三维景观。虚拟之旅将包括面积达 78 万平方米的紫禁城的各幅图像。

(5) "故宫是本厚书,总有些地方是你读不到的。"紫禁城的胡锺先生这样说道。为保护文物起见,有很多房间是不开放的。但是这个虚拟平台就可以打破时间和空间的限制,游客想看什么就看什么。

(6) 胡锺还说:"这种虚拟之旅中的互动和游戏部分还会吸引更多的年轻人,使他们理解、喜爱我们的民族文化遗产。"

(7) 在虚拟之旅中,历史人物还会和游客对话,回答他们的问题。大家还可以听到有关古迹建筑和奇珍异宝的历史轶事。

(8) IBM 的高级职员詹姆士·叶说:"这种网络环境是中英文双语式的,中外游客都可以从中体会紫禁城的丰富文化和故事传说。"

《试题调研》

(第二辑)

Notes

swarm *n.* 一大群

interactive *adj.* 交互式的

boundary *n.* 界限

virtual *adj.* 虚拟的

three-dimensional *adj.* 三维的

heritage *n.* 遗产

available *adj.* 可用的

image *n.* 图像,画面

